

**THE ENGLISH PROVINCIAL NEWSPAPER PAST AND  
PRESENT: ACCESS AND PRESERVATION**

**DIANA DIXON**

**UNIVERSITY COLLEGE LONDON**

**A thesis submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy**

UMI Number: U602800

All rights reserved

INFORMATION TO ALL USERS

The quality of this reproduction is dependent upon the quality of the copy submitted.

In the unlikely event that the author did not send a complete manuscript and there are missing pages, these will be noted. Also, if material had to be removed, a note will indicate the deletion.



UMI U602800

Published by ProQuest LLC 2014. Copyright in the Dissertation held by the Author.  
Microform Edition © ProQuest LLC.

All rights reserved. This work is protected against  
unauthorized copying under Title 17, United States Code.



ProQuest LLC  
789 East Eisenhower Parkway  
P.O. Box 1346  
Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1346



## ABSTRACT

### THE ENGLISH PROVINCIAL NEWSPAPER PAST AND PRESENT: ACCESS AND PRESERVATION

English provincial newspapers began in the early eighteenth century and by 1900 there were well over 2.000 different titles in existence. The purpose of this thesis is to examine how easy it is for researchers to find out what newspapers existed, and to gain access to the physical newspaper and to its contents.

An introductory chapter demonstrates the use and importance of local newspapers and the diversity of repositories in which they may be stored.

The thesis explores the adequacy of bibliographic control both of older newspapers and of current titles by examining published bibliographies and catalogues from the nineteenth century onwards. An interview with the General Editor of the *Bibliography of British Newspapers* outlines some of the problems faced in advancing this project. The acquisition policies of the British Library of current free newspapers are discussed, with particular reference to their advertising content. A survey measured the amount of advertising in newspapers received under legal deposit at the British Library and made recommendations for the retention of free newspapers.

Difficulties with the bibliographic description of newspapers are reviewed in the context of international guidelines for cataloguing newspapers. Points that need to be considered for a full bibliographic description of a newspaper are considered.

The problems associated with the physical deterioration of newsprint and surrogacy are reviewed, with reference to microfilming and digitisation initiatives in the UK and abroad. The NEWSPLAN project is reviewed in detail.

Access to the contents of provincial newspapers is discussed in the context of indexing. The problems that need to be considered when indexing local newspapers are considered and recommendations are made to assist those embarking on projects. A survey of local newspaper indexing in English local studies libraries updates one conducted in 1987.

An interview with the Newspaper Librarian at the British Library illustrates the role of the British Library past, present and future. The increasing importance of the IFLA Round Table on Newspapers demonstrates a healthy recognition of the importance of newspapers as an information source.

Diana Dixon  
28/05/03

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acknowledgements		i
Abbreviations		ii-iii
Preface		1
Chapter One	Introduction	6
Chapter Two	Bibliographic Control of Older English Newspapers	46
Chapter Three	Bibliographic Control of Current English Provincial Newspapers	74
Chapter Four	Bibliographic Description of Newspapers	94
Chapter Five	Indexing Provincial Newspapers	120
Chapter Six	Surrogacy and Preservation	150
Chapter Seven	NEWSPLAN	181
Chapter Eight	Summary and Conclusions	208
Select Bibliography		233

Appendices		261
Appendix 1	Comparative tables of inclusions in bibliographies for Huntingdonshire and Leicestershire	262
Appendix 2	Lists of English provincial newspapers	264
Appendix 3	Newspapers listed as primarily advertising	268
Appendix 4	Lists of free newspapers based on returns from regional NEWSPLAN committees	270
Appendix 5	Free newspapers not included in returns from regional NEWSPLAN committees	282
Appendix 6	Newspapers sampled to determine percentage of news content	289
Appendix 7	Table showing proportion of advertising	291
Appendix 8	Advertising in Merseyside free newspapers	292
Appendix 9	Advertising in Suffolk free newspapers	293
Appendix 10	Newspaper data elements for manual records	294
Appendix 11	Data entry sheet used in New York State	295
Appendix 12	Guidelines for describing newspapers in <i>Bibliography of British Newspapers</i>	297
Appendix 13	Interview with Charles A Toase	300
Appendix 14	Interview with Edmund King	305

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

I am particularly indebted to my supervisors Professor John McIlwaine and Professor Mirjam Foot for their encouragement, tolerance, wisdom and support.

I owe especial thanks to Edmund King, Newspaper Librarian, for his generosity in giving me time to discuss various aspects of my research and for the help he has given me throughout. The colleagues with whom I worked on the East Midlands and LASER NEWSPLAN projects, especially Ruth Gordon and Selwyn Eagle were excellent role models and their enthusiasm was inspirational. I am especially grateful to John Byford for awarding me the Consultancy to investigate advertising in free newspapers in 1998 as this motivated me to carry out this research.

## **ABBREVIATIONS**

AACR	Anglo American Cataloguing Rules
ARL	American Research Libraries
BBN	Bibliography of British Newspapers
BL	British Library
BLNL	British Library Newspaper Library
CBEL	Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature
CCD	Charge-coupled Device
CGN	Consultative Group on Newspapers
CILIP	Chartered Institute of Library and Information Professionals
CONSER	Cooperative Online Serials Project
COPAC	Consortia of Online Public Access Catalogues
EMRLS	East Midlands Regional Library System
EROMM	European Register of Microform Masters
GLAN	Greater London Archives Network
IFLA	International Federation of Libraries Associations and Institutions
ISG	Information Services Group of the Library Association
JISG	Joint Information Systems of the Higher Education Funding Councils for England Scotland and Wales and the Department of Education for Northern Ireland
LA	Library Association
LASER	London and South Eastern Region
LC	Library of Congress

LC	Library of Congress
MARC	Machine Readable Cataloguing
MLAC	Museums, Libraries and Archives Council
NCBEL	New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature
NEH	National Endowment for the Humanities
NOF	New Opportunities Fund
NRLS	Northern Regional Library System
NWRLS	North Western Regional Library System
OCLC	Online Computer Library Center until 1981 Ohio College Library Center
OCR	Optical Character Recognition
OPAC	Online Public Access Catalogue
RSIS	Reference, Special and Information Section
RSVP	Research Society for Victorian Periodicals
RTN	Round Table on Newspapers
SCONUL	Standing Committee on National and University Libraries
SWRLS	South Western Regional Library System
TIFF	Tagged Information File Format
TTH	Times Tercentenary Handlist
USNP	United States Newspaper Program
WMRLS	West Midlands Regional Library System
YHJRLS	Yorkshire and Humberside Joint Regional Library Service

## **PREFACE**

The inspiration for this thesis arose from a growing recognition, while carrying out research into the history of provincial newspapers in the East Midlands area, of the difficulties in establishing what newspapers had ever been published in a given locality. Personal experience revealed that not only was it sometimes almost impossible to obtain an accurate list of newspapers but that there were often problems in locating surviving copies and gaining access to their contents. The rationale behind this thesis was to explore how those wishing to consult English provincial newspapers from their beginnings in the early eighteenth century to the present day are served by existing information sources and to consider whether the situation needs improving. Despite considerable interest in British newspapers and their preservation, no recent study has addressed this topic. For this reason it seemed timely to conduct a full-scale investigation into what information sources exist for tracing, locating and using English provincial newspapers past and present with the intention of mapping the current state of bibliographic provision and availability. The thesis is intended to update previous work and to offer an original contribution to knowledge.

For much of the thesis an historical perspective is adopted to ensure that older initiatives are not overlooked. It is intended that the findings

will assist press historians to gain a clearer picture of English provincial newspaper publishing and the whereabouts of surviving newspapers.

The thesis aims to investigate how users access English provincial newspapers and their contents. It examines bibliographic control, cataloguing, indexing, preservation and surrogacy with the intention of identifying strengths and weakness in provision. The emphasis is upon England rather than the whole of the United Kingdom because both Scotland and Wales have national libraries which have been active in collecting and disseminating information about newspapers in their respective nations. It is concerned with newspaper collections in libraries: public, private, national and academic, rather than with libraries in newspaper offices. It is important to make a distinction because the libraries maintained by newspaper offices for the use of their journalists contain general reference works and other sources to meet their information needs, and although they may hold extensive back files of the newspapers they publish, these are not generally available for public access. Besides current general information sources journalists also require well-maintained retrospective cuttings files and archives, all of which must be accessible at short notice.

Access to a provincial newspaper involves tracing what newspapers have been published throughout England from their beginnings to the present day, and where they can be found. Therefore it was found necessary to evaluate the effectiveness of existing bibliographies, union



lists and finding lists of newspapers, old and new. The quality of bibliographic description for newspapers needs to be discussed in the context of the particular problems that cataloguers face when describing newspapers and of the different information needs of press historians, who would appreciate additional information that might throw light on publishing history. Access to the contents of newspapers is considered both in terms of what newspaper indexing has already taken place, especially in libraries, and by looking at the principles of newspaper indexing. The format and physical condition of newspapers is reviewed and the NEWSPLAN project to microfilm provincial newspapers is discussed in some detail. Although there is a large corpus of literature on NEWSPLAN, there is no study, which examines it historically. The future preservation of newspapers is examined in the light of a number of recent projects to microfilm and digitise newspapers both in the United Kingdom and overseas.

## **Methodology**

A variety of methodologies have been used. A literature review was particularly relevant to the discussion of bibliographic control. The author (DD) 's experience of compiling a number of bibliographies and finding lists on the history of nineteenth century periodicals and newspapers while employed at the Victorian Studies Centre at Leicester University (1970-73) and afterwards was pertinent to this study. The working archive of the Editor of the *Bibliography of British Newspapers* was transferred to DD in 2003, when she assumed the post of General Editor

of the project. In order to assess the bibliographic control of current provincial newspapers, DD was given copies of the returns compiled by regional NEWSPLAN committees on current newspapers in their region for comparison with current acquisitions in the British Library Newspaper Library (BLNL).

The examination of the current policy towards free newspapers in BLNL involved quantitative sampling of a week's accessions, as well as a content analysis of selected titles from Leicester, Merseyside and Suffolk while being employed as a consultant by the BLNL to survey the amount of news in primarily advertising journals in Spring 1998. As a member of the British Library Consultative Committee on Newspapers from 1984-2002 and the Steering Committee for NEWSPLAN East Midlands (1987-89), later the East Midlands NEWSPLAN Implementation Committee (1989-), DD was fortunate to have access to the unpublished minutes of both committees. DD served both as Project Director of NEWSPLAN East Midlands (1986-87) and as assistant to the Project Officer, Selwyn Eagle, for the London and South East Region (LASER) NEWSPLAN (1994-96) giving her practical experience on the realities of NEWSPLAN.

For the chapter on newspaper indexing, the British Library generously allowed DD access to their database on newspaper indexing, based on surveys, which took place in the 1980s. Because BLNL has been unable to keep the database up to date, a new survey of newspaper indexing activity in local authority libraries in England was conducted by DD

between 2002 and 2003. DD is grateful to the Editor of the *Bibliography of British Newspapers*, Charles Toase and the Newspaper Librarian at the British Library Newspaper Library, Edmund King, for their invaluable advice and the information they made available to her. See Appendices 13 and 14 for transcripts of the interviews conducted with them.

## **CHAPTER ONE**

### **INTRODUCTION**

National and local newspapers are both very important to the future for their record and description of events, personalities, political and social life, for their editorial commentary, and their reviews of cultural, sporting and other activities. Even advertisements provide important source material for future social and economic historians<sup>1</sup>.

#### **Definitions of a newspaper**

The International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO) gives the following definition for a newspaper:

Newspaper: Serial Publication which contains news on current events of a special or general interest. The individual parts are listed chronologically or numerically and usually appear at least once a week. Note - newspapers usually appear without a cover, with a masthead, are normally larger than A3 (297mm X 420mm)<sup>2</sup>.

A consultative document issued by the British Library Newspaper Library entitled *The newspaper collections and the future* (1977) stated,

The definition of a 'newspaper' used by the British Library covers broadly those serial publications, issued, monthly or more frequently, with a recognisable news content however specialised or personalised; a fiction content may also be included<sup>3</sup>.

It is important to note that these definitions normally excluded the papers issued by estate agents to promote properties for sale,

parish magazines and many informally produced community newsletters.

One of the problems of newspaper nomenclature is that of describing local newspapers. For the purpose of this study the term provincial newspaper will be used to cover both regional newspapers, which generally circulate in several towns or counties, and local newspapers, i.e. newspapers with a narrower circulation area, such as a single county or a town.

### **Brief history of the provincial press**

Newspapers in England originated in the seventeenth century, as pamphlets, in the form of newsletters and news sheets. By the eighteenth century a number were published daily, with a fair coverage of advertisements and news. The lifting of restrictions on provincial printing in 1695 soon led to weekly newspapers appearing in provincial market towns, such as Worcester, Norwich, Bristol and Nottingham. It is likely that the first provincial newspaper was the *Norwich Post Boy*, although as Chapter 4 will demonstrate, other newspapers have laid claim to being the first. Although the news was derived almost entirely from London, the advertisements in particular showed a local flavour and have become a useful resource for historians<sup>4</sup>. Restrictive taxation on newspapers and advertisements gravely hampered the development and spread of newspapers in Britain until the middle of the nineteenth century<sup>5</sup>.

The first tax was introduced in 1712 which required every copy of a newspaper to be stamped, in an attempt to restrict the number of newspapers being published. Taxes were also placed on advertisements and an excise duty on paper was also imposed. The taxes gradually increased throughout the eighteenth century so that by 1815 the price of a newspaper was 7d. The taxes were finally repealed: in 1853 Advertisements; in 1855 the Stamp Duty, and in 1861 the Paper Duty.

Once these so-called taxes on knowledge were removed, newspapers of all kinds flourished throughout the country. Notable was the rise of the daily newspaper, both in London and large provincial cities such as Liverpool and Manchester, and also a proliferation of weekly local newspapers. It was significant that in 1846 there were 200 provincial newspapers in circulation and that by 1865 this number had increased to 750. Soon most sizeable provincial centres could boast five or six competing titles at any one time, and with the advent of the provincial evening newspaper in the 1890s this number increased, so that towns the size of Kettering boasted two evening papers. One of the consequences was that provincial newspapers became much more local in content once smaller towns had their own newspapers. To give some idea of the magnitude of the newspaper press, in 1884 the *Newspaper Press Directory* advertised 275 new newspaper and magazine titles. In 1895 it claimed there were some 2304 newspapers flourishing in the

British Isles. In 1879 some 49 newspapers were circulating in Devon alone<sup>6</sup>.

The problem was that newspaper publishing in the nineteenth century was extremely volatile and many newspapers had extremely short lives. Paper shortages in World War I, followed by the economic depression of the 1930s reduced the number of provincial newspapers, especially dailies. In recent years, a number of long-established newspapers have ceased publication, such as the *Reading Mercury* 1723-1987, but many of these have been replaced by free newspapers, dependent on advertising. Initially the free newspapers were disregarded by libraries for having little information content, but increasingly they are recognised as information sources in their own right, because in many cases they are the only source of local news and they also carry advertisements of all kinds. Many localities also produce community monthly newsletters, which are often regarded as magazines rather than newspapers. For instance, in Southwold for many years the monthly newsletter, *Blyth Bugle*, was an invaluable source of information. In recent years, immigrant communities have started producing newspapers in their own languages but to date little research has taken place on the quantity of these.

## **Press histories**

There is a number of succinct histories of the British newspaper press available. A useful summary can be found on the British Library Newspaper Library (BLNL)'s web site<sup>7</sup> and the *Encyclopaedia of the British press 1492-1992*<sup>8</sup> carries introductory chapters outlining the history of British newspapers. Rosemary Wells wrote a highly pertinent chapter 'History of newspaper publishing and its implications for microfilming' in the report of the South West NEWSPLAN pilot project<sup>9</sup>. More recently, Elizabeth Melrose gave a brief and informative summary of English newspaper history at the International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA) Round Table on Newspapers seminar at Glasgow in 2002<sup>10</sup>. Consultation of the various bibliographies of press history listed below will guide readers to appropriate sources.

## **Bibliographies of press history**

Lionel Madden and Diana Dixon compiled a helpful introductory survey of writing on individual nineteenth-century British newspapers, and Joanne Shattock discussed general histories of the press including newspapers in the same volume<sup>11</sup>. Under the editorship of J. Don Vann and Rosemary VanArsdel a useful research guide to Victorian periodicals examined problems of bibliographical control<sup>12</sup> and Lionel Madden and Diana Dixon looked at recent writings on periodicals and newspapers in a second volume<sup>13</sup>. Diana Dixon wrote an article in *Victorian Periodicals*



*Newsletter* in 1984 entitled, 'The provincial press: a decade of writings', which was intended to update Madden and Dixon<sup>14</sup>.

Several bibliographies are useful in tracing general histories of the press and also those of individual newspapers. The most comprehensive, though by no means exhaustive for the provincial press, is *The newspaper press in Britain* by David Linton and Ray Boston<sup>15</sup> and this should be the starting point for any enquiry. It is necessarily selective but it will lead the enquirer to some bibliographies of secondary sources although it is deficient in its coverage of minor publications on provincial newspapers and fails to cover local historical and antiquarian journals. More recently an article in *Media History* by Diana Dixon<sup>16</sup> examined the sources available both in hard copy and on the Internet for those interested in newspapers and their history.

Some bibliographies of the periodical and newspaper press are restricted to a particular period. A good example is William Smith Ward's *British periodicals and newspapers, 1789-1832: a bibliography of secondary sources*<sup>17</sup>. For pre-1800 newspapers reference should be made to Weed and Bond's *Studies in British newspapers and periodicals from their beginnings to 1800: a bibliography*<sup>18</sup>. Lionel Madden and Diana Dixon (1975) *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies, 1901-1971* is a useful starting point for nineteenth

century newspapers<sup>19</sup>. Larry Uffelman continued it in 1995 as *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies, 1972-1991*<sup>20</sup>. The compilers tried to cover as much material as they were able to locate in provincial libraries as well in the national collections. Nonetheless, it is restricted by period, and omits a large number of important nineteenth century publications, including the two major press histories by H.R. Fox Bourne and James Grant<sup>21</sup>, as well as numerous interesting snippets of information contained in nineteenth century publications such as *Northampton Notes and Queries*. Linton's bibliography on the twentieth century press is more detailed and comprehensive<sup>22</sup>. Currently, two annual bibliographies attempt to record recent writings about newspaper history: these are in *Victorian Periodicals Review* and in *Media History*<sup>23</sup>.

## **Literature review**

Until recently, newspapers as part of a library collection have not merited much attention in the literature. An extremely informative chapter by John Westmancoat<sup>24</sup> in Dewe's *Local studies collections* covered the situation as it stood in 1990, examining British Library policy in some detail and providing an overview of the main issues. Before that, Joe Hovish's<sup>25</sup> MPhil thesis at Aberystwyth discussed problems of storage, bibliographical control and exploitation of newspapers in public libraries. This was a useful state of the art analysis which placed considerable emphasis on the

deterioration of files of newspapers in public libraries. It appeared just before the first pilot project to audit provincial newspapers and microfilming, NEWSPLAN, started and it is therefore very out of date now. NEWSPLAN will be discussed in Chapter 7.

Publication of the first NEWSPLAN project by Rosemary Wells<sup>26</sup> changed the whole way in which provincial newspaper collections were regarded and marked a great increase in literature about them. Besides the ten published NEWSPLAN reports an irregular publication, *NEWSPLAN News* began in 1995. Each issue generally focuses on one region to discuss developments<sup>27</sup>.

BLNL, in line with other departments in the British Library, started its own newsletter, the *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (1980-). In the early years it concentrated on developments and initiatives in BLNL with reports on new indexes and publications on newspapers. Over the years its emphasis has changed and with an increase in size, it began to feature informative and illustrated articles on aspects of the collection, along with news about the library. In 1997 it changed its title to *Newspaper Library News*. The newsletter was very well regarded both by librarians and users of newspapers and its suspension in 2001 was greatly regretted. It is hoped that the newsletter will be revived when time and resources can be found to do so. It is likely that any future newsletter will only be available online.

Much of the literature has focused on libraries maintained by newspaper offices to serve the needs of their editorial staff. A number of books have appeared on the management of news libraries of which the most highly regarded for British librarians is Geoffrey Whatmore's *The modern news library*<sup>28</sup> and, although it appeared in 1978, it is still regarded as being useful for basic principles. Selwyn Eagle wrote a helpful introductory survey on sources of information on news which was updated in 1999 in a markedly different second edition by Sarah Adair<sup>29</sup>. Nigel Spencer's (1997) *News information: online, CD ROM and Internet* examined up to date sources<sup>30</sup>. With the proliferation of newspapers on the Internet Paul Pedley's 'Resources revealed: tracking down newspapers and journals on the web'<sup>31</sup> is helpful and 'Newspapers and news sources on the web' on a web site from Sheffield Hallam University<sup>32</sup> is a good starting point for students of press history.

In the United States there is more to choose from. A fairly recent, helpful book Barbara Semoche's *News media libraries*<sup>33</sup>, which is primarily concerned with newspaper libraries but it covers valuable advice on indexing as well as an interesting chapter on the history of news libraries in the United States. Another useful title was Nupham's *Newspapers in the library: approaches to management and reference work*<sup>34</sup> but it has a marked American bias and there remains a need for a comparable work for the UK. One of the

projected tasks of the IFLA Section on Newspapers is to prepare a newspaper management handbook and efforts are being made currently to secure a British library school student to work on parts of the handbook<sup>35</sup>.

Librarians have always been interested in providing access to the contents of their collections by effective indexing. Newspapers, as Chapter 5 will reveal, have attracted interested individuals prepared to devote time and money to indexing from the nineteenth century onwards. A surge of activity occurred in the UK in the 1980s as the result of government funding for short term projects to train the unemployed. Newspaper indexing was considered a useful activity both for libraries and for the training it offered, with the result that numerous short term projects began in public libraries which generated articles in both the *Local Studies Librarian* and the *Indexer*. Parallel with this was the development of software for indexing and this spawned a considerable body of literature on using software for newspaper indexing projects.

While it was not specifically concerned with newspapers, after the publication in 1984 of the Ratcliffe report on preservation in British libraries<sup>36</sup>, a vast amount of literature on preservation appeared and much of this is relevant to those attempting to preserve newspaper collections. More recently, the focus has turned to surrogacy and the feasibility of digitising collections of newspapers. Some of this

interest in newspapers and their formats may have been stimulated by an article in the *New Yorker* in July 2000 in which Nicholson Baker accused libraries of destroying hard copy files of newspapers<sup>37</sup>. His article attracted interest world wide and led to much debate in the literature. In his book *Double fold: libraries and the assault on paper*<sup>38</sup> he suggested that microfilm was an unsatisfactory medium for newspapers and he advocated preserving hard copy files. The issues raised by Baker will be discussed in Chapter 8.

### **Newspaper research**

Interest in newspapers as a subject in their own right was slow to emerge. In the 1960s there was great interest in the history of Victorian periodicals on both sides of the Atlantic. In 1963 Charles Toase was so frustrated when he tried to find any information about British newspapers in directories and bibliographies that he decided to investigate the possibility of compiling a bibliography of British newspapers<sup>39</sup>. In North America, researchers at Purdue University, Indiana, including Michael Wolff, were hoping to compile a bibliography of Victorian periodicals. Wolff discussed some of his attempts to list the periodicals and newspapers for the month of October 1864 at a conference held in Toronto in 1967,

However, when I tried to discover the currency or relevance of newspapers and periodicals, I was constantly stymied by the lack of directories or other reference materials. In order to focus both on this problem and my research interests

I decided to see how difficult it was to see what newspapers and periodicals were published during a given week<sup>40</sup>.

Wolff's views echoed those of Toase and recognised that much needed to be done before an accurate picture of the publishing history of Victorian newspapers and periodicals could be achieved. One of the outcomes of the Toronto conference was the suggestion that a forum for discussion for scholars working with Victorian periodicals should be initiated, as a result of which *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* was started in 1968. At a meeting in New York in 1969, the Research Society for Victorian Periodicals was founded. Its aim was to,

encourage, assist, coordinate and record the advancement of scholarly research in all areas pertaining to the newspaper, periodical and other serial publications which appeared within the chronological compass of the Victorian age<sup>41</sup>.

From the start the society was much concerned with bibliographic control and many of its members were active in this area. See p.61ff for discussion of the *Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals 1824-1900* (Phase 1)<sup>42</sup>. *Victorian Periodicals Review* is now a scholarly medium for peer-reviewed articles on a wide range of topics on nineteenth century periodicals from throughout the English speaking world.

In Britain, Michael Harris, an eminent newspaper historian, felt that there was a need for a journal on the history of the press from the earliest times to the present and in 1984 the *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* was founded with Harris as editor. This was able to draw on the papers submitted by interested press historians to the media history seminars that occurred throughout the academic year at the Institute of Historical Research at London University between 1985 and 1997, as well as including an annual bibliography on newspaper and periodical history compiled by DD. In 1995 Greenwood Publishing took control of the journal and produced it as an annual but this only survived for three years before finding a new publisher. Carfax, a branch of Taylor and Francis, renamed the journal, *Media History*, and put it under the management of a large editorial board with Michael Harris, Tom O'Malley, Mark Turner and Amy Aronson at the helm. It originally appeared twice a year but from 2003 it appears three times a year. Increased interest in the subject is seen in the establishment of media studies courses in universities such as the University of Westminster.

## **Users**

A survey of newspaper use was conducted in Devon in 2001 by Ian Maxted<sup>43</sup> revealing that 45% of users in Devon consulted newspapers for family history. This correlated with an earlier survey carried out by LASER in 1999 which showed that 55% of users were looking for family or local history<sup>44</sup>. All ten NEWSPLAN regions



conducted surveys of newspaper use in 2001 and these are available on the NEWSPLAN 2000 website<sup>45</sup>. Table1 summarises the findings of the regional surveys conducted in 2001.

**TABLE 1**  
**Regional surveys of newspaper use**  
**summary of the findings**  
**%**

	<b>LASER</b>	<b>NW</b>	<b>SW</b>	<b>N</b>	<b>Y&amp;H</b>	<b>EM</b>	<b>WM</b>
<b>LOC</b>	27.4	40.1	46.1	32	28.7	44.3	26.0
<b>PICS</b>	12.6	12.6	11.1	17	14.9	13.3	9.2
<b>LEGAL</b>	10.7	12.2	10.6	5	9.6	12.6	11.3
<b>BUS</b>	13.2	2.4	5.0	4	22.4	5.7	12.1
<b>POL</b>	10.1	6.5	9.4	2	21.4	5.2	10.7
<b>HOUSE</b>	5.4	7.6	3.9	7	4.2		
<b>SPORT</b>	14.3	12.4	6.7	7	23.5	11.6	11.0
<b>ADS</b>	10.4	7.4	11.7	8	14.8	11.3	12.6
<b>OBITS</b>	13.2	35.3	55.0	28	15.5		11.6
<b>INQUEST</b>		12.6	8.9	13			

This information is based on the regional survey results of the 10 Newsplan regions of the UK and can be found at <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/regsurvey2.html>

**KEY**

LOC local history; PICS pictures; LEGAL- Legal and crime; BUS –business and financial; POL - political; HOUSE- house history; ADS - advertisements, OBITS – obituaries; INQUEST – reports on inquests

LASER – London and South Eastern region; NW – North Western; SW South West; N – Northern; Y&H – Yorkshire and Humberside; EM- East Midlands; WM- West Midlands.

The surveys are important because they give an insight into what topics are of interest to those using newspapers and they also reveal how users regard newspapers and how easy they find using them. User surveys are also useful for gauging changing perceptions as a result of better facilities for reading newspapers and for improved guides to their contents when these are introduced in libraries.

Because different regional committees asked different questions, it is hard to identify common patterns of use throughout England. Some regions asked about use for family history. Northern region (47%) and the East Midlands (51%) did, which closely tallies with findings in London and the South East region (LASER), but in West Midlands (19%) and Yorkshire and Humberside (18.5%) there was considerably less interest, and this is also reflected in a low use of obituaries and for pictures throughout the English regions.

Predictably, there was a reasonably high level of interest in local history throughout. With the exception of Yorkshire and Humberside interest in the history of houses was low, but in Yorkshire and Humberside interest in business, politics and sport was higher. There was a fairly similar amount of interest in newspapers as sources of information for sport.

Further surveys of newspaper use in all regions are being undertaken at different times between 2003 and 2004<sup>46</sup>, as figures can easily be skewed by a higher demand for a particular topic as a result of a television programme or an educational project in a given week. Ian Maxted reported on the findings of a recent user survey in Devon which continued to show that 33% of newspapers were consulted for local history, 33% for births, marriages and deaths and 21% for obituaries<sup>47</sup>.

The interest in newspaper use is also reflected in the increased number of users visiting the BLNL. Since 1951 user numbers have increased by almost sevenfold. Table 2 illustrates the rise in numbers of personal visits to Colindale since 1951.

**TABLE 2**  
**Visits to BLNL**

1951	5554
1961	6286
1971	16796
1981	21722
1991	30098
2001	36000

In May 1991 an analysis of material used by readers in BLNL was carried out which revealed that 28% of all requests were for English and Welsh provincial newspapers<sup>48</sup>. Of these 37% were

for pre-1900 newspapers; 40% for those of 1900–49, and post-1950 accounted for 23% of requests. By 2000 the proportion of those using local newspapers had risen to 40%.

In recent years, there has been a number of conferences on newspaper use by historians. The topic is by no means new and as early as 1908 the American Historical Association conducted a session on newspapers as part of its annual conference. In 1923 Lucy Salmon wrote a seminal text on newspaper use by historians<sup>49</sup>. At the first IFLA international seminar on 'Newspaper Preservation and Access' held in London in 1987 a number of historians, including Michael Harris, Jeremy Black and Roy Porter discussed newspapers as historical resources. In 1993 Jerry Knudson presented a paper to the BL Consultative Group on Newspapers (CGN) entitled 'Late to the feast: newspapers as historical sources' in which he stated,

Even today newspapers seem to be peripheral sources for many historians who may give them a cursory glance for a few juicy quotes to enliven the pages of already completed research<sup>50</sup>.

Stimulated perhaps by the controversy sparked by Nicholson Baker's book *Double fold: libraries and the assault on paper*, the Office for Humanities Communication mounted a provocatively entitled seminar, 'Do we want to keep our newspapers?' in London in 2001<sup>51</sup>.

LASER/GLAN mounted a successful conference on 'Newspapers and Lifelong Learning' in London February 2001<sup>52</sup> and the Midlands and Anglia Local Studies Group held a well attended one day course at Bingham on the subject of 'Newspapers and their users' in June 2001. Earlier in the East Midlands, the Information Services Group and Local Studies Groups of the Library Association held a one day seminar on newspapers in Nottingham in 1991. The British Library conducted two seminars on newspaper indexing in 1987 in Bristol and 1988 in York and it has also run four NEWSPLAN conferences between 1990 and 2002<sup>53</sup>.

There is a wealth of booklets now on newspapers as sources for family historians<sup>54</sup>. The first recent serious study of newspaper use by historians came when Jane Secker completed a PhD in 1999 on 'Newspapers and historical research: a study of users and custodians in Wales'<sup>55</sup>. This showed that Welsh historians were aware of, and valued newspapers, but were often ignorant of their whereabouts and of bibliographical tools.

### **Newspaper User Groups**

Users of newspapers have also been involved in forming their own pressure groups. Of these the most important one for British newspaper users has been the Consultative Group on Newspapers (CGN). This arose because those SCONUL members who were involved in a scheme for lending microfilms of newspapers wished

to set up a committee on newspapers to which Charles Toase, editor of the *Bibliography of British newspapers* and Peter Allen, Superintendent of BLNL were invited<sup>56</sup>. A steering committee was set up to prepare the *World List of National Newspapers*<sup>57</sup>. As a result of this, the British Library set up a Working Party on Access to Newspapers in 1979 which recommended that this ad hoc committee should become a permanent committee. This became the Consultative Group on Newspapers (CGN) which first met in 1983.

Its terms of reference were:

- 1 to comment upon and review any matter brought before it relating to newspapers in the British Library... especially their acquisition, storage, preservation and use
- 2 to discuss and suggest action on any other matters relating to newspaper collections with particular reference to the role the British Library can play in developing the newspaper collections and services in the United Kingdom
- 3 to act as a channel of communication between the British Library and the newspaper producers, librarians and users in the United Kingdom<sup>58</sup>.

Members were drawn from a wide range of organizations and interests. In 1990 they represented the newspaper industry, media librarians, genealogists and family historians, SCONUL, the Library Association Local Studies Group (LSG), the National Libraries of Wales and Scotland, researchers into newspaper history, Charles Toase as Editor of the *Bibliography of British newspapers* and representatives from the British Library as well as the BL Newspaper Librarian. The committee met regularly twice a year

from 1984 until its final meeting in November 2002. Members were informed by letter in August 2002 that because of restructuring in the British Library, the Consultative Group would be disbanded. It had served as a useful medium for the British Library to inform members of new developments and initiatives taking place at Colindale and for members to air their concerns about using the newspaper collections.

## **Collections**

Although English provincial newspapers date back to the early eighteenth century, few attempts at the time were made to collect them in any systematic manner. Their survival depended upon individual collectors such as Dr Charles Burney and it seems unlikely that parish libraries, often the precursors of public libraries, made any effort to collect them. Certainly there are no newspapers in either the Ashby de la Zouche or Loughborough parish libraries. Thus, survival of eighteenth century newspapers is fortuitous chance. With a few exceptions, eighteenth century newspapers were not generally regarded as worthy of collection and Muddiman attributed two reasons for their incomplete coverage: 'the somewhat unaccountable neglect with which they were treated and second the maleficent results of the Stamp Acts'. He also suggested that the Stamp Acts led to,

A craze for collecting the stamps, with the result of either the mutilation or loss of many periodicals. It is to be regretted that this mania still continues<sup>59</sup>.

By the early nineteenth century a number of private subscription libraries, such as the Devon and Exeter Institution, The Leeds Library and the Newcastle Literary and Philosophical Society Library bought local and national newspapers for the benefit of their subscribers and filed, boxed or bound past issues. For this reason, surviving subscription libraries remain an excellent source of local newspapers from the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. The collections in both Newcastle and Devon contain unique runs of local newspapers, many of which are not available elsewhere. Libraries such as Chetham's Library in Manchester are a rich source of single copies of defunct titles, such as the *Manchester Telegraph* as well as a run of the *Macclesfield Courier* 1814-26; the Leeds Library has a fine collection of unstamped newspapers and the William Salt Library in Stafford has substantial holdings of the *Potteries Gazette* as well as isolated copies of a number of unique titles. The collection in the Devon and Exeter Institution complements that in the West Country Studies Library in Exeter Central Library.

Newspapers have also found their way into museums and into county record offices more by chance than by a conscious decision to collect them. A number of provincial museums hold excellent collections of local newspapers. Notable are the Norris Museum in St Ives in Cambridgeshire; Taunton Museum, and the Dorset Museum in Dorchester. The Norris Museum is a particularly rich



source of early eighteenth century Huntingdonshire papers. The Royal Institution of Cornwall has impressive holdings of the *Western Luminary* 1818-36; the *Sherborne Mercury* 1798-1816; and the *Royal Cornwall Gazette* 1801-1951. Many of these collections are more complete than those held by BLNL or in the local public libraries.

Municipal public libraries in England only began in the mid-nineteenth century. Although most collected newspapers and operated newspaper reading rooms, their late start meant that few have collections reflecting the full newspaper publishing history of the towns they served<sup>60</sup>. Despite this, the local public library is often the best place to start searching for provincial newspapers, as back copies of newspapers were generally boxed or bound and files have been stored. There are extensive and unique files in collections in libraries such as Gloucester, Derby, York, Liverpool, Birmingham and Manchester public libraries and these have attracted donations. Local newspaper offices are often happy to off-load cumbersome back files to the local library. Rosemary Wells pointed out that while libraries may have kept and bound their newspapers they were often lax in maintaining accurate lists of their holdings<sup>61</sup>.

In 1970-72 DD visited all the major local studies collections in order to compile a list of nineteenth century newspapers held in English provincial libraries and she was impressed by the richness and

extent of the collections of local newspapers<sup>62</sup>. The list rapidly became out of date because of the changes in local authorities caused by local government reorganisation in 1974. This meant that many previously independent authorities were subsumed into larger authorities such as Derby, Nottingham, Leicester, Peterborough, and Huntingdon, all of which became part of the county library service. In Suffolk, the two counties East and West Suffolk became one but local studies continued to be managed from three bases at Ipswich, Bury St Edmunds and Lowestoft. In some cases responsibility for preservation and microfilming was centralised and in others it was not. This situation has been further complicated by further local government reorganisation in 1996-7 which created unitary authorities and meant that Derby, Leicester, Nottingham, and Peterborough once again became independent.

The two English copyright university libraries, those of Oxford and Cambridge, obtained copies of newspapers in the eighteenth century haphazardly as the result of bequests and donations rather than in any systematic manner. One of the finest collections of eighteenth-century English newspapers which are not available elsewhere can be found in the Bodleian Library. It has particularly strong holdings of rare English provincial newspapers, including a rare copy of the *Exeter Mercury* 1715 and a run of the *Leicester Journal* from August 1771 to December 1800<sup>63</sup>. The strength of its early newspaper collections is based on the acquisition of a number

of important collections including that of John Nichols. The library purchased this in 1865 after it was turned down by the British Museum Library. Unfortunately, it no longer has storage facilities for collecting local newspapers and had to decline an offer of the back files of the *Oxford Mail* when offered by the publisher. Without the benefit of a substantial deposit similar to the Nichols collection, Cambridge University Library has significantly fewer provincial newspapers except from Cambridgeshire and its immediate neighbours<sup>64</sup>. Some Oxford and Cambridge colleges such as Caius College have short runs of newspapers in their collections<sup>65</sup>.

Other universities may also collect some local newspapers for the use of their readers. Loughborough takes copies of the local press but discards them after six months. Leicester University does not file back copies of the *Leicester Mercury* but it does have available a complete microfilm of the *Northampton Mercury* from 1720.

Newspaper publishers often keep back files of titles they publish but they may have been cut by journalists and are often not complete. Increasingly publishers are anxious to pass them to local libraries, as happened when the Devon and Exeter Institution was offered files of the pre-1812 *Exeter Gazette*. Not all publishers are so public spirited, and whereas it is possible to consult files of the *Loughborough Echo* at the publisher's offices, the *Melton Mail* offers no access nor information about its holdings.

### **British Library newspaper collections**

In common with parish and other libraries in the eighteenth century no attempt was made by the national library to collect newspapers systematically and the early collections in the British Museum relied on chance donations<sup>66</sup>. In 1762 the British Museum library received a donation of seventeenth century newspapers, newsbooks and pamphlets known as the Thomason Tracts. More important for English provincial newspapers was the acquisition of the library of Dr Charles Burney consisting of unique files of eighteenth-century newspapers. Burney spent the later years of his life collecting books, manuscripts and newspapers and built up a valuable collection which the British Museum agreed to purchase for £13,500 in 1818. Much of Burney's collection was based on newspapers collected and annotated by Narcissus Luttrell (1657-1732) which Burney acquired in 1786 when the collection was dispersed.

Originally the Burney collection consisted of seven hundred volumes of newspapers but this has been augmented by the purchase of additional files, including a run of the *Newcastle Courant*, and it now consists of over 1,200 different volumes. Harris suggests that Burney may have collected newspapers because of his literary and publishing interests<sup>67</sup>. Burney's newspaper collection was particularly strong for its coverage of London newspapers but a number of important and rare provincial

newspapers can also be found, including the *Stamford Mercury* from 1712 to 1732. The Burney collection is available on microform in the British Library at St Pancras and is currently being digitised on an experimental basis<sup>68</sup>.

In 1822 the British Museum signed an agreement with the Stamp Office to transfer copies of newspapers that had been deposited. By law all newspaper proprietors had to supply the Stamp Office with a copy of every newspaper published which had to be retained for two years before being discarded. London newspapers started to be transferred in 1823 and in 1832 the agreement was extended to provincial newspapers which could be transferred to the Museum after three years. This explains why the newspaper collections of English provincial newspapers are much more comprehensive from the 1830s onwards.

Until 1842 only books and pamphlets were formally registered at Stationers' Hall but the 1842 Copyright Act made provision for registration of any 'encyclopaedia, review, magazine, periodical work, or other work published in a series of books or parts'<sup>69</sup>. This meant that for the first time newspapers came within the scope of copyright and could be registered voluntarily. The main evidence of the existence of copyright in a work was compulsory deposit of a copy of each newspaper at the Copyright Receipt Office of the British Museum. Until 1870 newspapers were not claimed, since the

British Museum still regularly received the copies deposited at the Stamp Office. The situation was complicated by the fact that once the Stamp Acts on newspapers were repealed in 1855 many publishers simply failed to deposit newspapers, falsely believing that they no longer had a legal obligation to do so.

After 1873 deposit became much more widespread probably because the Museum employed agents to ensure publishers complied. The 1869 Newspaper Printer and Reading Room Act required publishers to deposit newspapers directly with the British Museum rather than with the Stamp Office<sup>70</sup>. A series of lawsuits was brought to force publishers to deposit under the 1842 Copyright Act<sup>71</sup>. The terms of the legislation meant that newspapers could be deposited at the end of a year of publication rather than issue by issue, as is the case today. The result was that many titles never arrived at the library at all. This can be explained by the fact that many newspapers were very short-lived, often only surviving for a few weeks and that their publishers simply overlooked their obligations to deposit defunct titles. With over a thousand newspaper proprietors by the 1870s the task of ensuring they deposited their newspapers was impossible to police.

In the nineteenth century there was a certain amount of dissatisfaction about the quality of the collections of periodicals and newspapers. A writer in *Notes and Queries* wistfully commented on

a collection of newspapers held by Peele's Coffee House many of which were not in the British Museum Library<sup>72</sup>. In 1882 W.J. Thoms wanted to establish a library in London solely for periodicals and newspapers<sup>73</sup>. Cornelius Walford took the idea a little further and actually began collecting periodicals, from which he hoped to devise a vast catalogue<sup>74</sup>. Unfortunately Walford's death in 1885 ended this project and his collection of periodicals was presumably destroyed when his widow's house was struck by lightning the following year.

By the 1880s newspapers were appearing in large numbers and in 1882 1,700 separate titles were acquired by the British Museum, causing the Trustees to recognise them as an entity in their own right. The result was the establishing of a Newspaper Room with its own reading room, storage and conservation area and admissions policy. The library was not always as enthusiastic as it should have been to collect newspapers and a note in *Notes and Queries* in 1883 drew attention to the fact that six tons of newspapers were destroyed after being turned down by the British Museum and the Guildhall library<sup>75</sup>. The problems of storage were becoming more and more acute as the numbers of newspapers continued to increase. In 1896 3,300 were acquired, almost twice as many as in 1882, and alternative storage solutions were examined. Requests for government funding for additional storage fell on deaf ears. In 1881-2 Lord Lingen had proposed that local authorities should

receive provincial newspapers rather than the British Museum and this idea was revived in a draft British Museum Bill in 1900 which empowered the Trustees, to transfer from the Museum to any county or borough councils in England or Scotland files of local newspapers for which these authorities could find a practical use. More controversial was a second clause which would have allowed the Museum to destroy unwanted material including post 1837 newspapers. Fortunately for posterity, a vociferous outcry led to withdrawal of the Bill and funds were allocated to purchase land at Colindale for building a newspaper repository.

Building began in 1903 and the new repository was opened in 1905. Newspapers from this were conveyed to the British Museum once a month as there were no facilities for readers at Colindale. Because the repository was full by 1922, it was proposed in 1928 that a purpose built newspaper library should be built alongside the existing repository at Colindale with reader facilities and accommodation for newspapers that were still being stored at the Museum. In 1932 all the newspapers, including the foreign ones, except the Burney collection of pre-1801 newspapers, were transferred to Colindale along with a quantity of non-newspaper material. When it opened in 1932 it was expected to have sufficient storage for the next fifty years but this was not to be the case. On October 20 1940 bombs completely destroyed the original 1903 building along with some 6,000 volumes of newspapers<sup>76</sup> with a



further 15,000 being damaged. Temporary buildings were erected in 1950 and these were full by 1951, necessitating construction of a new permanent building which opened in 1957 and offered storage facilities up to 1970. A further extension opened in 1972 with a reading room, public cafeteria and staff canteen.

The 1970s were a time of change for Colindale with its incorporation into the British Library in 1973. Two important milestones were publication of the Colindale catalogue<sup>77</sup> in 1975 and the preparation and publication of the consultation paper, *The newspaper collections and the future* in 1977. Recognition of the importance of user views was seen with the establishment of a Working Party on Access to Newspapers, later from 1983 the CGN, see above pp. 23-25. Professional librarians were also recruited: John Westmancoat was appointed to the first curatorial post as Information Officer in 1980 and one of his first achievements was to start the *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* in 1980. The Library gained its first professional Head of the Newspaper Library, Stephen Green, in 1981. It was under his direction that the first steps towards the highly successful NEWSPLAN project were made and this marked a dramatic change in the way in which newspapers were regarded.

The library has seen major changes in the way in which it handles its stock. It started microfilming in the 1950s of some damaged

British newspapers to fill gaps in the collection. Foreign language newspapers were microfilmed from 1969 onwards. By 1986 it was recognised that it was no longer economically viable to bind up the newspapers received on legal deposit and that in future these would be microfilmed. However, BLNL remains committed to retaining and storing the hard copy files of British provincial newspapers.

There is no doubt that the problems of space continue to cause concern. Newspaper files are bulky and greedy of storage. Over the years much time has been spent on proposals for new accommodation for the newspapers and their readers. The reading facilities have been greatly enlarged and in 1996 a new reading room for those using microfilm readers opened. The Copyright Receipt Office for Newspapers was opened in 1991 at 120 Colindale Avenue when BLNL assumed responsibility for the legal deposit of newspapers.

The library has been exemplary in publicising information about its collections since it first published its online catalogue of its collections on its website. The CGN members were assured on several occasions that the Colindale web pages are the most frequently visited part of the British Library website and this can be attributed not only to the catalogue but also to the informative articles on newspaper history and its links to NEWSPLAN and to its newsletters.

There is no doubt that the NEWSPLAN project has brought the BLNL the accolades it deserves, demonstrating cooperation and partnership between the regions, the national libraries of Ireland, Scotland and Wales and the British Library. The Library took a lead in preparing a bid to the Heritage Lottery Fund for an ambitious grant of £17 million to ensure that the newspapers identified as most at risk were microfilmed. The NEWSPLAN 2000 project is an example of a partnership between the BLNL, the newspaper industry, and local libraries and when it ends in mid 2004 1,700 more provincial newspaper titles will have been microfilmed.

### **Home Nations and Overseas**

English provincial newspapers have found their way into a variety of repositories in both in the UK and elsewhere. For instance, the National Library of Scotland holds a copy of the *Plymouth Chronicle* for 5 November 1816 and there are numerous other instances of newspapers appearing in collections at home and abroad. The major research libraries of the United States are rich in holdings of rare early eighteenth and nineteenth century newspapers. Libraries such as Yale University and the Huntington Library boast fine collections of late eighteenth and early nineteenth century English provincial newspapers that are not available elsewhere. DD found copies of several unique early nineteenth-century provincial newspapers when she visited the Huntington library, including the

*Guildford Journal and General Advertiser for the County of Surrey*

no.6.September 10 1831. A list of pre-1801 titles was made available by Gabler in 1931 <sup>78</sup>.

Efforts to preserve British newspapers cannot be regarded in isolation. The 1987 IFLA conference on 'Newspaper preservation and access'<sup>79</sup> attracted speakers from countries as far removed as Iran, India, Germany, Brazil and Nigeria and demonstrated that the issues concerning newspaper preservation were of international concern. Masterly surveys by Else Delaunay and Marie Thérèse Varlamoff<sup>80</sup> presented at the 2000 IFLA conference on 'Managing the preservation of periodicals and newspapers' in Paris, showed there was wide discrepancy between the developed and developing nations in the amount of preservation being undertaken.

Nonetheless besides the UK, the US and Australia, other countries with active newspaper preservation programmes include France, Germany, Sweden, Finland, Canada, Hungary, Japan, Venezuela, New Zealand, Denmark, the Netherlands and China. Useful lessons can be learned from the examples of how other national libraries handle newspapers.

### **The United States Newspaper Program**

This is one of the most impressive and extensive newspaper projects in the world. In the words of Bob Harriman, 'This aims to

locate, catalog, preserve and make available to researchers United States newspapers from the eighteenth century'<sup>81</sup> .It relies on funding from the National Endowment for the Humanities and managerial support from the Library of Congress, but it is essentially a state based project, with each state responsible for cataloguing and establishing priorities for microfilming titles at risk. It arose out of a wish by the Organization of American Historians to revise a bibliography of American newspapers and a recognition that hard copy newspapers were deteriorating fast. It also coincided with the development of a national serials database CONSER and the facility to incorporate MARC records into the database. This made it possible to explore the feasibility of compiling a newspaper database and the first pilot project was carried out in Iowa. The success of this project led to the launch in 1982 of a nationwide project which aimed to examine all repositories in the United States, state by state, to record information about American newspapers. Guidelines have been established for preservation microfilming for individual states to follow.<sup>82</sup> It is predicted that the project will be completed by 2007 by which time 151,000 titles will have been microfilmed.

Few other countries have been able to initiate such ambitious programmes. In Australia, the National Plan for Australian Newspapers (NPLAN) is similar to that in the United States with

each state or territory taking responsibility for its newspapers with the National Library offering a supporting role.

### **International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA)**

The (IFLA) Working Group on Newspapers<sup>83</sup> was set up under the auspices of the IFLA Section on Serial Publications in 1981 with the intention of investigating newspaper holdings in the national libraries of the world. One of its early achievements was organising the very successful conference on newspaper preservation and access in London in 1987<sup>84</sup> which highlighted problems being faced in newspaper collections throughout the world and enabled the Working Group to identify priorities for action. Other conferences, most notably in Paris and more recently in Glasgow and Berlin, were well attended, reflecting a growing international interest in newspapers. A volume of papers presented at IFLA General Conferences has just been published<sup>85</sup>.

In 1989 the Working Group became a Round Table within the IFLA structure, and its objectives were outlined,

The Round Table is concerned with all issues relating to newspapers in libraries and archives, including acquisition and collection development; intellectual and physical access; storage and handling; preservation of newspapers and their contents; preservation of microfilm of newspapers; interlibrary lending; and the impact of digital technologies on all of these.<sup>86</sup>

Its two most important goals are to gather and disseminate information on international newspaper collections, procedures and practices, and develop mechanisms for communication and interchange of knowledge between the major newspaper collections of the world and to encourage the development and adoption of international standards in newspaper preservation, microfilming and digitisation programmes.

A major achievement was publication of the *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers* and *Guidelines for preservation microfilming*<sup>87</sup>, both of which will be discussed further. From 2002 The Round Table became the IFLA Section on Newspapers and an impressive list of projects is being considered, including revision of the *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers* and preparation of a manual on newspaper management. The world-wide interest in the Section on Newspapers reflects a changing and positive attitude to the importance of newspapers and the need to ensure that users gain access to them as a result of coordinated efforts to record, locate and preserve them.

- <sup>1</sup> G Smith (2002) 'What to preserve? General principles', in J Budd *Proceedings of the IFLA Symposium. Managing the preservation of periodicals and newspapers*. Paris August 2000. München: K G Saur, 34-43.
- <sup>2</sup> Quoted in H. Komorous and R B Harriman (1988) *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers*. München : K G Saur, 2. <http://ifla.org/VII/rt13/broch/intguide>
- <sup>3</sup> (1977) *The newspaper collections and the future*. London:British Library, endpaper.
- <sup>4</sup> D Dixon (2000) Con man or honest broker: advertising in local newspapers. *Local Studies Librarian* 19 (1) 12-16, reviews the diversity of provincial newspaper advertising.
- <sup>5</sup> J Wiener (1969) 'Taxes on knowledge', in *The war of the unstamped: the movement to repeal the British newspaper tax 1830-36*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press gives a clear history of taxation and the move to repeal it.
- <sup>6</sup> I Maxted (2003) <http://devon.gov.uk/library/localstud/list387>
- <sup>7</sup> <http://bl.uk/collections/newspaper/history>
- <sup>8</sup> D Griffiths (1992) *Encyclopedia of the British press 1492-1992*. London: Macmillan.
- <sup>9</sup> R Wells (1986) 'History of newspaper publishing and its implications for microfilming', in *NEWSPLAN: report of the pilot project in the south west*. London: British Library, 3-22.
- <sup>10</sup> E Melrose (2002) 'From the Bristol Post Boy to the twin towers: local newspapers in England', in H Walravens and E King (2003) *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K G Saur, 247-53. <http://www.ifla.org/ifla68/papers>
- <sup>11</sup> L Madden and D Dixon (1978) 'Histories and studies of individual periodicals', 88- 98 and J Shattock 'General histories of the press', 99-122, in J D Vann and R T VanArsdel *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. New York: Modern Language Association.
- <sup>12</sup> S Bennett (1978) 'The bibliographical control of Victorian periodicals', in J D Vann and R T VanArsdel (1978), 22-51.
- <sup>13</sup> L Madden and D Dixon (1989) 'Histories and studies of individual periodicals 1976-1986', in J D Vann and R T VanArsdel *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. Vol 2. New York: Modern Language Association, 147-64.
- <sup>14</sup> D Dixon (1984) The provincial press: a decade of writings, 1972-1981. *Victorian Periodicals Review* 17, 103-7.
- <sup>15</sup> D Linton and R Boston (1987) *The newspaper press in Britain: an annotated bibliography*. London: Mansell.
- <sup>16</sup> D Dixon (2003) Navigating the maze: sources for press history. *Media History* 9 (1) 83-91.
- <sup>17</sup> W S Ward, (1972) *British periodicals and newspapers, 1789-1832: a bibliography of secondary sources*. Lexington, KY: Kentucky University Press; W S Ward (1974) Index and finding list of serials published in the British Isles, 1789-1832: a supplementary list. *Bulletin of New York Public Library* 77, 291-7
- <sup>18</sup> K Weed and R P Bond (1946) *Studies in British newspapers and periodicals from their beginnings to 1800*. Chapel Hill, NC:North Carolina University Press.
- <sup>19</sup> L Madden and D Dixon (1975) *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies, 1901-1971*. Toronto:Victorian Periodicals Newsletter.
- <sup>20</sup> L Uffelman (1995) *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies, 1972-1991*. Evansville, IL: Research Society for Victorian Periodicals.
- <sup>21</sup> J Grant (1872) *History of the newspaper press*. 3 vols. London: George Routledge and H R Fox Bourne (1887) *English newspapers*. 2 vols. London: Chatto and Windus.
- <sup>22</sup> D Linton (1994) *The twentieth century newspaper press in Britain: an annotated bibliography*. London: Mansell.
- <sup>23</sup> (1969-) Annual bibliography, in *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* later *Victorian Periodicals Review*. *Media History* (1998-) continues *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* (1984-1992) continued as *Studies in Newspaper and Periodical history* (1993-1995). It has carried an irregular series of Annual reviews in newspaper and periodical history.
- <sup>24</sup> J Westmancoat (1991) 'Newspapers and periodicals', in M Dewe *Local studies collections*. Aldershot: Gower, 302-58.
- <sup>25</sup> J J Hovish (1983) 'The local newspaper in the British public library: problems of storage, bibliographical control and exploitation'. University of Wales: MPhil thesis.
- <sup>26</sup> R Wells (1986) *NEWSPLAN:report of the pilot project in the south-west*. London: British Library.



- <sup>27</sup> <http://bl.uk/collections/newspaper>
- <sup>28</sup> G Whatmore (1978) *The modern news library*. London: Library Association.
- <sup>29</sup> S Eagle (1991) *Sources for the press and broadcast media*. London: Bowker Saur and S Adair (1999) *Sources for the press and broadcast media*. 2nd edn. London: Bowker Saur.
- <sup>30</sup> N Spencer (1997) *News information: online, CD ROM and Internet*. London: British Library.
- <sup>31</sup> P Pedley (2002) Resources revealed: tracking down newspapers and journals on the web. *Managing Information* 9 (1), 48-9
- <sup>32</sup> <http://www.shu.ac.uk/lc/ssb/newsrce>
- <sup>33</sup> B Semonche (1993) *News media libraries: a management handbook*. Westport, CT: Greenwood.
- <sup>34</sup> L Nupham (1988) *Newspapers in the library: approaches to management and reference work*. New York: Haworth
- <sup>35</sup> IFLA Section on Newspapers Minutes of the 2<sup>nd</sup> business meeting, Cape Milner Hotel, Cape Town South Africa 17 March 2003, 6.3
- <sup>36</sup> F Ratcliffe (1984) *Preservation policies and conservation in British libraries*. London: British Library
- <sup>37</sup> N Baker (2000) Deadline: the author's desperate bid to save America's past. *New Yorker* July 24, 42-61.
- <sup>38</sup> N Baker (2001) *Double fold: libraries and the assault on paper*. New York: Random House.
- <sup>39</sup> This is discussed in Chapter 2.
- <sup>40</sup> M Wolff (1967) 'Charting the golden stream: thoughts on a directory of Victorian periodicals', in J M Robson, *Editing Nineteenth Century Texts* Toronto: Toronto University Press, 37-59. He later published this as M Wolff (1970) *The Victorian periodicals project*. *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* 2, 15.
- <sup>41</sup> M Wolff (1971) Why RSVP? *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* 8, 3-5.
- <sup>42</sup> M Wolff, J S North and D Deering, eds (1976) *The Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals 1824-1900* (Phase 1). Waterloo, Ont: Wilfred Laurier University Press.
- <sup>43</sup> I Maxted (2001) An early Exeter newspaper rediscovered. *Local Studies Newsletter* September <http://devon.gov.uk/library/locstudy/list360>
- <sup>44</sup> <http://newsplan.co.uk/>
- <sup>45</sup> <http://newsplan2000.org/>
- <sup>46</sup> I Maxted (2001) Using local newspapers for learning and leisure. *Metropolitan lines: newsletter of the Greater London Archives Network* 56, 24-5. [http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met\\_56.pdf](http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met_56.pdf)
- <sup>47</sup> I Maxted (2003) NEWSPLAN survey of newspaper use, 2003. *Local Studies Newsletter* December. <http://devon.gov.uk/library/locstudy/list387>
- <sup>48</sup> (1991) Minute of the Consultative Group on Newspapers CGN91/10
- <sup>49</sup> L Salmon (1923) *The newspaper and the historian*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- <sup>50</sup> J Knudson (1993) Late to the feast: newspapers as historical resources. *American Perspectives: American Historical Association Newsletter* 31(7), 9-11.
- <sup>51</sup> D McKitterick (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication.
- <sup>52</sup> I Maxted (2003) <http://devon.gov.uk/library/locstudy/list387>
- <sup>53</sup> With the exception of the first conference the proceedings were published: (1994) *NEWSPLAN: current perspectives on newspaper preservation and access. Report of the 2<sup>nd</sup> NEWSPLAN Conference*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Information North; Wressell, P. and associates, (1998) *NEWSPLAN, Millennia and grids: the digital challenges*. Newcastle: Information North. <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/conf>. The papers presented at the fourth conference in 2002 are available at <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/conf>
- <sup>54</sup> Of these, A Collins (2001) *Using Colindale and other newspaper repositories* and C R Chapman (1983) *An introduction to using newspapers and periodicals* both published by the Federation of Family Historians are good examples of their kind.
- <sup>55</sup> J Secker (1999) 'Newspapers and historical research: a study of users and custodians in Wales'. University of Wales Aberystwyth, PhD thesis.
- <sup>56</sup> This information was derived from a conversation with Charles Toase. See Appendix 13.



- <sup>57</sup> R Webber (1976) *World list of national newspapers: a union list of national newspapers in libraries of the British Isles*. London: SCONUL.
- <sup>58</sup> (1987) The Consultative Group on Newspapers. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (9), 4
- <sup>59</sup> J G Muddiman (1920) *The tercentenary handlist of newspapers and magazines and reviews*. London: Times Publishing Company, (facsimile reprint (1966) Dawsons), 14.
- <sup>60</sup> There is a number of useful studies on the history of local studies collections. See R Ansell (1987) 'The historical development and present structure of public library local studies provision', in M Dewe *A manual of local studies librarianship*. Aldershot: Gower, 27-51 and D Dixon (2001) 'Local studies librarianship and its literature', in D Dixon *Local studies librarianship: a world bibliography*. London: Library Association Publishing, xii-xxi.
- <sup>61</sup> Wells (1986), 27. See note no 26.
- <sup>62</sup> D Dixon (1973) *Local newspapers and periodicals of the nineteenth century: a checklist of holdings in provincial libraries*. Leicester: Victorian Studies Centre.
- <sup>63</sup> (1878-8) *Catalogue of newspapers in the Nichols collection of the Bodleian Library*. 2 vols. Oxford: the Library, was the first attempt to list the holdings in the Bodleian. R T Milford and D M Sutherland (1935) *A catalogue of British newspapers and periodicals in the Bodleian Library*. Oxford: The Library, supplemented and augmented this list. The newspapers in the Nichols collection were microfilmed along with those in the Burney collection and are listed in S M Cox and J L Budeit (1983) *Early English newspapers 1622-1800: a bibliography and guide to the collection*. Woodbridge, CT and Reading: Research Publications.
- <sup>64</sup> It holds the *Huntingdonshire, Bedford and Peterborough Weekly Gazette* from 1859-1981 in hard copy and microfilm from 1815-1862.
- <sup>65</sup> Caius College holds the *Leicester Journal* 1841-43.
- <sup>66</sup> There is a number of useful short histories of the British Library Newspaper Library. For its predecessor, The British Museum Library, the most informative are M Harris (1986) 'Collecting newspapers and developments at the British Museum', in R Myers and M Harris *Bibliophily*. Cambridge: Chadwyck Healey, 44-62 and P R Harris (1998) *A history of the British Museum Library 1753-1973*. London: British Library.
- E Dyas (1989) The early development of the Newspaper Library. *British Library Newspaper Library News* (10) 4-6, and (1982) 1932-1982: 50 years service to readers and the public. *British Library Newspaper Library News* (5) 1-3. A fuller if not always unbiased account is E Ellis (1986) 'The British Library Newspaper Library 1973-1986'. Loughborough University of Technology: MA thesis. The Colindale web site contains a factual historical outline with a bibliography at <http://bl.uk/collections/newspaper/history>
- <sup>67</sup> M Harris (1986), 44-62.
- <sup>68</sup> E King, Newspaper Librarian outlined the project at the LASER/GLAN seminar on Newspapers and lifelong learning held in London on 9 February 2001. Available in *Metropolitan lines: newsletter of the Greater London Archives Network* at <http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met/> 56. Further reference will be made to the project in Chapter 6.
- <sup>69</sup> (1842) Copyright Act 5&6 Vict. c.45
- <sup>70</sup> (1869) Newspaper Printer and Reading Room Act 32 Vict.
- <sup>71</sup> Surviving records are held at the Copyright Receipt Office of the British Library and may be consulted by prior appointment. They consist of Receipt Books from October 1850 onwards and the information for periodicals includes title, part identification, date of receipt, name of publisher. From 1869 Newspaper Ledgers exist which are arranged by place of publication with the titles printed on the left and and receipts noted on a regular basis from 1873 onwards. Before 1973 only summaries of holdings were maintained.
- <sup>72</sup> J R D (1882) Old London and provincial newspapers. *Notes and Queries* 6th ser. 7, 368.
- <sup>73</sup> W J Thoms (1882) A new library for London. *Athenaeum* January 14, 57.
- <sup>74</sup> C Walford (1883) The outline of a scheme for a dictionary of periodical literature. *The Bibliographer* 3, 121-23, 169-73; 4, 13-15, 38-42.
- <sup>75</sup> B H P (1883) Old London and provincial newspapers. *Notes and Queries* 6th ser. 8, 355.

<sup>76</sup> There is some discrepancy between various sources on exactly how many volumes were completely destroyed. The current history on the BLNL web site suggests 6,000 but other sources claim 10,000 or even 15,000 volumes. The level of destruction means it is probably impossible to quantify this with any accuracy.

<sup>77</sup> P E Allen (1975) *Catalogue of the newspaper library*. 8 vols. London: British Library.

<sup>78</sup> A J Gabler (1931) Check-list of English newspapers and periodicals before 1801 in the Huntington Library. *Huntington Library Bulletin* 2,1-66.

<sup>79</sup> I P Gibb (1988) *Newspaper preservation and access: proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12-15 1987*. München: K G Saur.

<sup>80</sup> J Budd (2002) *Managing the preservation of periodicals and newspapers*. München: K G Saur.

<sup>81</sup> B Harriman (2002) The United States Newspaper Program: scope, achievements and program. Paper presented to 4<sup>th</sup> NEWSPLAN Conference London April 2002.

<http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan.org/18-25>

<sup>82</sup> <http://lcweb.loc.gov/preserv/usnguidelines>

<sup>83</sup> Details can be found at <http://www.ifla.org/VII/s39>

<sup>84</sup> (1987) Newspaper preservation and access. See note 79.

<sup>85</sup> H Walravens and E King (2003) *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K G Saur. <http://ifla.org/IV/ifla68/papers/058-127e>

<sup>86</sup> Newspaper Round Table Strategic Plan 2001-2003

<http://ifla.org/VII/s39/annual/sprtnews>

<sup>87</sup> H Komorous and R B Harriman (1988) *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers*. München: KG Saur and (1996) *Guidelines for preservation microfilming*. The Hague: IFLA.

## CHAPTER TWO

### THE BIBLIOGRAPHIC CONTROL OF OLDER ENGLISH NEWSPAPERS

'Periodical literature may be compared to a vast wilderness, without form and void, its extent unknown, its ramifications unfathomed', wrote Cornelius Walford in the nineteenth century. He continued,

It has been a dream of my life to explore this region, to compass its extent, to open roadways by which it may be conveniently traversed, to lift up some of the once noble forms which lie smoldering in oblivion; to rescue many a bright memory from the mass of decadence in which it has become embedded, to analyze the underlying strata, and to show of what its successive formations have been composed<sup>1</sup>.

This chapter examines bibliographical control of the provincial press in England from the seventeenth century onwards. Published finding lists, library catalogues and bibliographies of periodicals and newspapers will be examined to see how the existence and location of provincial newspapers has been recorded and what tools exist to help those wishing to consult copies of older newspapers.

Provincial newspapers in Britain were strictly controlled by the government from the early eighteenth century until the middle of the nineteenth century. The means of imposing control was by stamp duties and in June 1712 the newspaper stamp duty legislation came into being<sup>2</sup> and, with various

changes in the amount exacted, remained in force until 1855 when it was finally abolished. Few records remain of the early stamp returns for newspapers but from 1831 ledgers were maintained, 24 of which cover the period 1831 to 1870 and these are now in the National Archives, (Public Record Office) (IR/69).

### **Locating copies of provincial newspapers**

The main problem for the would-be researcher is locating where, if anywhere, copies exist. In Britain by far the largest and most comprehensive collection of British and foreign newspapers is held at the British Library Newspaper Library at Colindale (BLNL). Although its holdings are impressive, there are some serious gaps in coverage, especially of British provincial newspapers before the middle of the nineteenth century. Because its holdings of titles prior to 1830 are weak, it is generally safer to assume that titles will be in local public libraries. However, here it is important to recognise that with some notable exceptions most public libraries only came into being in the mid-nineteenth century.

The British Museum's collection of provincial newspapers before 1830 tends to be haphazard and incomplete, with the exception of the Burney collection covering the period up to 1817<sup>3</sup>. See above pp. 30-31. The British Museum only collected newspapers systematically after the Copyright Act of 1842 and many short-lived titles disappeared without trace.

## British Library Newspaper Library Catalogues

A printed version of the catalogue of newspapers in the British Museum first appeared in 1905<sup>4</sup>. Don Vann and Rosemary VanArsdel regarded this as 'so inadequate and full of inaccuracies that it was of little use to scholars'<sup>5</sup>. To compound the problem Colindale suffered serious bomb damage in World War II and approximately 10,000 titles were destroyed especially from the years 1874, 1876, 1896-1900, 1908-1912. See footnote no. 76 on p.45. Vann and VanArsdel were more positive about the eight volume printed catalogue, based on the library's holdings up to 1970 which was published in 1975<sup>6</sup>. However, it has to be remembered that the catalogue only reflects the holdings of BLNL and does not include pre-1800 newspapers held in the British Museum Library at that time. Its introduction stated,

The working catalogue of the Colindale collection from which this version was produced was compiled for users of the library. Since readers usually require a particular publication, of which they know the title, or the newspapers of a particular locality, it was designed to provide two sets of full entries, one alphabetical geographical and one alphabetical by titles. This catalogue has been produced from the set of master cards originally used to produce the working catalogue<sup>7</sup>.

For the purpose of this study, the relevant volumes are Volume 1 which covers entries for London and also for the local newspapers of the Greater London area, subdivided into thirty three boroughs; and Volume 2 covering England and Wales: Scotland and Ireland. Newspapers in this volume can be searched for under the places in which they circulated or where they were published. Volumes 5-8 provide an alphabetical title index. Where newspapers had the same title, such as *Evening Mail*, these were subdivided by place of publication and then chronologically within each place.

This provided access by both title and place and made searching for newspapers by place considerably easier than hitherto. However, users of the collection were well aware that the most reliable and accurate record was to be found by consulting the pasted-up catalogue available in the Colindale reading room. Certainly by 1995 when DD was checking the Colindale entries for LASER NEWSPLAN, the only way to be sure of a reliable, up-to-date reflection of the library's holdings was to consult this catalogue.

Since 2000 the online catalogue of the Newspaper Library has been freely available on the British Library Online Public Access Catalogue (OPAC)<sup>8</sup>. The catalogue can be searched by title, place of publication or distribution and also by keyword. Users in the Reading Rooms are also able to define place and dates so that it is possible to retrieve all titles published in Leicester 1874-1900 in a single search. Its appearance has revolutionised access to information about newspapers held in Colindale and it provides flexible, user friendly access to the collections.

### **Academic and National Libraries**

Besides Colindale, impressive holdings of newspapers are held in the British copyright libraries of Oxford and Cambridge universities and the national libraries of Wales and Scotland and other major academic libraries. It should be remembered that despite their status as copyright libraries neither Cambridge University Library nor the Bodleian Library claim more than a few current newspapers and these are from the counties in their immediate vicinity. However, their OPACs are available via the Internet and can be



searched along with those of a number of British academic libraries on COPAC<sup>9</sup>. In addition the Bodleian Library published some useful guides to early newspapers in the collection<sup>10</sup>.

## **Public Libraries**

Many of the major local studies collections in public libraries hold significant runs of local newspapers and these are often much more comprehensive than those held in the British Library Newspaper Library. Thus, collections in Liverpool, Birmingham, Bristol and Nottingham will yield many more titles than a glance at the Colindale catalogue reveals. Increasingly local authorities such as Birmingham are making their catalogues available on the Internet. A number of libraries such as Birmingham, Newcastle, Nottingham, and Gloucester also have published their catalogues<sup>11</sup>. Prior to compiling his survey of British newspapers and periodicals, William S. Ward conducted a postal investigation,

Statistically speaking, more than 260 public and private libraries in the United Kingdom and Eire have been good enough to respond to my inquiries, and some 94 newspapers whose inception dates lie between 1789 and 1832 have been good enough to respond to my inquiries about newspaper files. By no means every one of these 475 libraries and newspaper offices have files for the years 1789-1832, but 359 of them did<sup>12</sup>.

Coverage in local collections varies greatly with some libraries having almost complete coverage and others much less. Ward revealed just how widely scattered such collections of newspapers are and his survey covered public and academic libraries in Britain and Ireland and North America. Although 92% of Leicestershire titles are available in Colindale, only 57% of those for



Huntingdonshire are. See Appendix 1 for tables showing comparative coverage in bibliographies for both these counties.

Disasters, such as the fires at Norwich Central Library in 1994 and in Northampton in 1996<sup>13</sup>, can have grievous effects on collections of local newspapers. Norwich lost substantial numbers of volumes of hard copy newspaper files, but fortunately only the outer boxes of the microfilm versions suffered. The microfilms remained intact within the boxes. As discussed in the previous chapter, newspapers also may be held in local museums and in private libraries, some of which boast fine collections of local newspapers. Considerable runs of older newspapers may be held by newspaper offices but details need not be available to the public.

### **Availability of files of newspapers**

Complacency about the whereabouts of listed titles is misplaced. The examples of the fires in Norwich and Northampton show just how vulnerable newspaper files can be and what is listed in a bibliography may not still be extant when sought after. This was true even in the nineteenth century.

Writing about the newspaper press of Liverpool, J. Cooper Morley revealed several titles had disappeared completely, as the following illustration shows,

*The Leverpoole Courant*, being an abstract of London and other news. Printed and published by Samuel Terry, Leverpoole. This is undoubtedly the first newspaper issued in Liverpool. No copies are extant at the present time, but a copy of "No 18, from Tuesday, July the 15th to Friday July the 18th, 1712", was seen and used by Mr. Brooke when writing his history of Liverpool<sup>14</sup>.

Sometimes newspaper files are disposed of in an arbitrary manner. There are numerous examples of newspapers disappearing without trace from the eighteenth century onwards. Chapter 3 shows that many contemporary free newspapers are still avoiding legal deposit and no file is being maintained anywhere. Pressure on space means that files of newspapers may be discarded at short notice. Only recently the Suffolk local studies librarian was alerted just in time that the Beccles Town Hall was about to jettison its newspaper holdings.

In the 1970s Middlesbrough public library, faced with shelves of deteriorating original newspapers, disposed of unique files of its earliest papers, after having them microfilmed, to a private collector, who allows no access to them. Because the quality of the microfilm is poor some papers are no longer readable. Even in well ordered collections, material may get misfiled and may not be available for many years. However, the opposite can occur and hitherto unknown material may come to light. While searching through a box in the Norris Museum in St Ives in 1997 DD discovered a copy of the *St Ives Mercury* that was previously unlisted in bibliographies. A member of the public alerted North Yorkshire County Library to a previously untraced first issue of the *Craven Herald* and Ian Maxted reported how he was presented with a framed eighteenth century complete copy of an unknown and unrecorded Exeter newspaper<sup>15</sup>. These examples show just how vulnerable newspapers are and that library collections are by no means static and that all bibliographies and location lists go out of date.

## General Bibliographies of the Press

For many years the standard list of English and Welsh newspapers was *The tercentenary handlist of English and Welsh newspapers, magazines and reviews*, compiled by J.C. Muddiman in 1920 (*TTH*)<sup>16</sup>. It claimed to be comprehensive and was divided into two sections: 1 'The London and suburban press' and 2. 'Provincial'. The list contains useful introductory essays on press history and law. Although the arrangement seems logical enough at first glance, it is not particularly helpful, as suburban seems to include some, but by no means all, titles from the counties of Kent, Surrey, Middlesex and Essex. Thus, the *County Herald and Weekly Advertiser for Surrey* (1818-1973) appears in the 'Provincial press' section despite a note which states it was published in London to 1857, and then Guildford and London until it ceased publication. Conversely, *Orr's Kentish Journal* (1860-66), which was published in Greenwich, appears where one would expect it in the London and suburban section. However, it is more surprising to find the *Lancashire, Yorkshire and Northern Weekly Budget* (1861-62), originally a Manchester paper and later published in London, appearing in the 'London and suburban' section, if the compiler had adopted the same criteria he used for the *County Herald and Weekly Advertiser for Surrey*. There are other examples of a lack of consistency in the arrangement of entries.

Within each section the arrangement is chronological with a separate title index. Muddiman's chronology was based on the first year of the recorded holding of the title rather than the known or attributed starting date of the

newspaper. Sometimes, this date is considerably later than the first date of publication, as the following examples show: 'Leicester Era. No. 1. Feb 9 - May 18, 1899' indicating this is the first published issue, whereas the entry for the 'Huntingdon, Bedford and Peterborough Gazette. No 222. Jan 3, 1818 to May 4, 1839. Continued as Cambridge Independent Press', makes it clear that the paper began some time before 1818. To find the real starting date it is necessary to consult other sources, including histories and bibliographies of Cambridge newspapers to trace the date back to 1813. A discussion of the problems associated with dating newspapers is given in Chapter 4.

The *TTH* has the advantage that it is possible to trace all provincial titles from a given year but it is time consuming and laborious to trace all newspapers published in Devon, for instance, as a careful check would need to be made town by town through the title index to ensure that everything was covered and this still would miss titles such as *Alfred*, and *Bryce's Exeter Gazette*. Leicester titles such as *Kemp's Midland Counties Advertiser*, *Wyvern* and *Payne's Leicester Advertiser* would also be overlooked. Graham Pollard described it as, 'The most complete list available, based on the British Museum holdings, but not innocent of serious misprints'<sup>17</sup>.

It should be remembered that whatever limitations it has, its compilation was a major step forward for the bibliographic control of English and Welsh periodicals and newspapers. Its weakness was that it was not, as it claimed, 'practically exhaustive as regards the seventeenth and nineteenth centuries'<sup>18</sup>, because it was only based on the holdings of the British

Museum and the Bodleian library. As Scott Bennett<sup>19</sup> points out, this claim was soon challenged, and articles in *Notes and Queries*<sup>20</sup> added missing titles and suggested that the provincial press had been seriously under represented in its pages. Writing in 1921, 'M' stated,

A preliminary search in the Index to titles Section II 'The provincial press' shows that the Addenda for one county will amount to about 150, almost entirely belonging to the nineteenth century<sup>21</sup>.

Roland Austin, librarian at Gloucester City Library, added many corrections and additions from Gloucestershire and he also felt that 'Mr Muddiman will be the first to acknowledge that such a work as his must be incomplete, more especially in the provincial section'<sup>22</sup>. He did concede that,

Everyone interested in the history of newspapers and periodicals must be grateful to Mr J.G. Muddiman and to *The Times* for the compilation and publication of the 'Handlist' - to the former for such laborious work and to the latter for enabling it to be printed for the use of students<sup>23</sup>.

Other bibliographers added their own additions and changes, including Archibald Spark from Bolton and Norah Richardson, who had access to the private newspaper collection of Henry Sell. Archibald Sparke added 33 new titles for Bolton and 15 corrections to existing entries<sup>24</sup>. Norah Richardson felt that,

No student and lover of the old newspaper can be too grateful for that summary, and for all the help and stimulus of all Mr Muddiman's work in this wide field of research<sup>25</sup>.

She was able to add a number of Wiltshire titles and to provide a detailed entry for *Trewman's Exeter Flying Post*. In a later article she added another seven provincial titles, including, the *Loyal Intelligencer, or Lincoln, Rutland, Leicester, Cambridge and Stamford Advertiser* for June 10 1794<sup>26</sup>.

One of the harsher criticisms of the *TTH* concerned the difficulty of searching for titles which had changed, Austin cited the example of the *Gloucester Mercury*, which was a continuation of the *Gloucester Free Press*. He felt 'the index would have been more complete had it included the titles of papers which were the successors, under different names of earlier ones'<sup>27</sup>. He also cited the case of the *South Midland Free Press* which was a continuation of the *Northampton Mercury* neither of which was indexed. A further illustration of its deficient coverage of the provincial press was demonstrated in Asa Briggs's *Press and public in early nineteenth century Birmingham* (1949)<sup>28</sup> which revealed that only 11 of the 45 Birmingham newspapers and periodicals published between 1800 and 1835 appeared in the *TTH*. Nonetheless, despite its shortcomings, it remained the standard and accessible listing until the 1970s and Bennett refers to it as 'an impressive and bibliographical ground breaking work'<sup>29</sup>.

### **Press bibliographies of particular periods**

Compilations by period are often more comprehensive and accurate than those that try to be cover the history of the English newspaper from its beginnings. Here a number of titles stand out: Cranfield's *English provincial newspaper 1700-1760* with its supplementary updates<sup>30</sup>, Wiles's *Freshest*

*advices* covers the period up to the middle of the nineteenth century<sup>31</sup>; R. S. Crane and F. B. Kaye's *A census of British newspapers and periodicals 1620-1800*<sup>32</sup>, and William S. Ward's *Index and finding list*<sup>33</sup> and the *Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals*<sup>34</sup> are all essential sources of information for those wishing to know what newspapers were in existence at a given date.

### **Pre-1800 newspapers**

Until the 1970s most of the research in locating and describing newspapers was concerned with early newspapers. Bibliographers, with one or two exceptions, balked at listing nineteenth century newspapers, especially those published after the repeal of the Stamp Acts in 1855. This can be explained by the profusion of new titles that appeared after 1855. An advance in bibliographical control of newspapers and periodicals up to 1900 was publication of entries on newspapers and periodicals in relevant volumes of the *Cambridge bibliography of English literature* (1940)<sup>35</sup>. For early newspapers, the relevant volume covered the period 1660-1800 and the entries were compiled by Graham Pollard. In volume two he adopted the following arrangement:

- A Bibliographies, histories and general studies
- B London newspapers
- C Provincial, Scottish and Irish

Section C is of particular relevance to this study and for this he devised an arrangement by town within which there was a sub-division between secondary writings and the individual newspaper titles. Information on individual titles was informative: Eg. 'The Leicester and Nottingham Journal [1 12 May 1753] –1787 Continued as The Leicester Journal 6 May 1787 –25

June 1920 [pbd John Gregory]'. This updated the first bibliography on early newspapers by Crane and Kaye<sup>36</sup> which was a pioneering work but was soon discovered to be inaccurate and incomplete. Pollard's work was regarded as accurate and useful and formed the basis for Geoffrey Cranfield's later work on English provincial newspapers.

Writing in 1952, Cranfield stated in the introduction to his own *Handlist*,

It is claimed that, within its more restricted sphere, the following hand-list is not only more detailed and elaborate than its predecessors, but that it also rectifies many of their errors and supplies their deficiencies<sup>37</sup>.

He had begun his work because he found that,

In the course of an intensive study of the provincial press during the most formative period of its growth, the author finds himself confronted by two main problems. The first was the inadequacy and inaccuracy of existing lists of these early papers; the second was the difficulty of tracing extant copies, as the files of English eighteenth century newspapers at the British Museum and the Bodleian proved with few exceptions to be extremely small and highly incomplete<sup>38</sup>.

Cranfield's work still remains the most authoritative and highly regarded for the early eighteenth century.

Each volume of the *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature* (1969-71) except volume 1 contained a section on newspapers and magazines.

Volume 2 appeared in 1971 and the section was contributed by R. M. Wiles, a respected bibliographer of newspapers of the period. He had updated G.

A. Cranfield's *Handlist of English provincial newspapers and periodicals*



1700-1769 in a series of articles which had appeared in the *Transactions of the Cambridge Bibliographical Society* and the entry bears a striking resemblance to Cranfield's work and Wiles's revisions and additions. In particular Wiles located a number of new titles and also noted some important title changes.

William S. Ward tried to do the same for the period 1780-1832 and envisaged his work as being complementary to the *Union list of serials* and to the (then) forthcoming *British union catalogue of periodicals*<sup>39</sup>. He conducted a postal survey of nearly 500 libraries and newspaper offices to glean information about newspaper holdings.

### **Nineteenth century**

The relevant volume of the *Cambridge bibliography of English literature* covering 1800-1900 contained a section on newspapers. Because there was so much more information available on nineteenth century newspapers a slightly different arrangement was adopted for this volume.

- A Technical development
- B The history of journalism
- C The daily papers
- D The weekly papers
- E Magazines and reviews

Of particular relevance to this study is the subdivision, 'The provincial daily press' in Section C and, less helpfully, 'General weekly papers' which lists a selection of provincial weeklies.

The nineteenth century entry was greatly improved and expanded upon by Sheila and Henry Rosenberg who contributed the section on newspapers and periodicals to Volume 3 of the *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature*<sup>40</sup>. The inclusion of weekly provincial newspapers was a useful and welcome addition to previous lists. The entry in the previous edition was by Graham Pollard to whom the Rosenbergs acknowledged their debt, 'work without which, whatever we have done would have been impossible'<sup>41</sup>.

Despite the great critical acclaim the listing received, the Rosenbergs were well aware that their work was by no means complete. In an article in the newly fledged *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* they discussed their methods of compilation, the problems they encountered and the omissions they had to make<sup>42</sup>. Although much of what they said concerned the vast numbers of periodicals and newspapers and the wide range of subjects covered, they also talked about problems of bibliographical description. The detailed work of the Rosenbergs was a great step forward and a significant improvement to our knowledge.

The appearance of the third edition of the *Cambridge bibliography of English literature* nineteenth century volume in 2000<sup>43</sup> was awaited with enthusiastic anticipation, but the section on newspapers and periodicals is disappointing and offers little advance on the Rosenberg's work, apart from listing recent press histories. In fairness, it should be noted that the untimely demise of the chief contributor to the section, David Linton, probably affected the work adversely. The Rosenberg's bibliographical work came at a time when there was great interest in the history of Victorian periodicals both sides of the

Atlantic. Walter Houghton had begun work on the *Wellesley Index* in 1958 and researchers at Purdue University, Indiana, including Michael Wolff, were hoping to compile a bibliography of Victorian periodicals. The *Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals 1824-1900* (Phase 1)<sup>44</sup> was a monumental advance. It claimed it,

makes available in one alphabetical listing the newspaper and periodical titles published in England, Ireland, Scotland, and Wales at any given time between 1824 and 1900<sup>45</sup>.

In a penetrating review Sheila Rosenberg criticised its introductory statement which suggested a degree of inclusivity that was not there. It stated that,

The Waterloo directory is a first stage in overcoming obstacles of that scale and in meeting the challenge to providing accessibility to the enormous mass and range of material<sup>46</sup>.

However, it never claimed to be exhaustive in its coverage and its compilers were well aware that they had only touched the tip of the iceberg with their listing of 24,000 titles. They compiled the work using the *TTH, Mitchell's newspaper press directory, the Union list of serials, BUCOP, Wiener's Finding List* and the (1905) *BM Catalogue of newspapers*. They were also well aware of problem of relying on secondary source material, declaring,

The major limitation to the use of Victorian periodicals at present is that the working scholar, the subject matter specialist, often at the mercy of library holdings, always runs the risk of relying on hackneyed sources, on inadequate secondary works, on a haphazard and uneconomical probing wherever half educated guesses direct<sup>47</sup>.

The work was entitled Phase 1 and it was recognised that it was necessary to do shelf checks in libraries which would probably double the number of titles,

The composite checklist that constitutes Phase 1 was conceived as an essential guide toward the creation of a more thorough and accurate research guide. It will thus be used in preparation of Phase II, a comprehensive directory which will be based on the alphabetical list of Phase I, augmented and corrected by actual shelf checks<sup>48</sup>.

Due largely to the indefatigable enthusiasm and energy of Professor John S. North in finding financial support and conducting the project, the *Waterloo directory* has moved forward to Phase 2 and separate volumes covering Ireland, Scotland and England<sup>49</sup> now exist. The volume for England first appeared in 1994 on a CD ROM but in 1997 it appeared in hard copy in ten volumes. These ten volumes are intended as the first ten in a fifty volume set. They list some 25,000 titles but it is envisaged that the completed set will have identified, listed and located some 125,000 English newspapers and magazines.

The editor's intention has been to gather information from the issues of each journal as well as from all the available secondary sources<sup>50</sup>.

Despite this claim, DD was surprised to discover in conversation with John North in 1996<sup>51</sup> that he had no knowledge of the ten NEWSPLAN reports and it is clear that overlooking this valuable information source in the first ten volumes, is to the detriment of the coverage of the provincial press. Unlike most other bibliographies, the flavour of each title is illustrated with a facsimile cover or title page as well as the necessary bibliographic information. Teams of researchers have visited a large number of libraries and meticulously recorded their actual holdings. This is a vast achievement

but it should not be assumed that it is by any means comprehensive as far as the provincial press in England is concerned.

### **The twentieth century**

Peter Davison's work on the twentieth century which covered 'newspapers and magazines not devoted to literature' in Volume 4 of the *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature*<sup>52</sup> was welcome because it covered an area not previously covered. It provides information both on provincial dailies, such as the *Liverpool Post*, as well as provincial weeklies, such as the *Pennith Observer*. Although such titles started pre-1900, they are just as much part of the twentieth century heritage as newcomers, such as the *Leicester Trader*.

### **Press directories**

For anyone researching the newspaper press of a given county or city in England, it is still important not to overlook the various newspaper press directories. They are a vital and necessary source for contemporary information and past issues are equally important for retrospective searching. The oldest, *Charles Mitchell's newspaper press directory* (1846-) is the longest running and most useful. Its history was recorded by Susan Gliserman and David Linton<sup>53</sup>. It gives information about London and provincial newspapers, including frequency, price and political affiliations, as well as advertisements which sometimes provide information about circulation figures as well. The great advantage is its unbroken history since 1846 and the fact that a complete run is available on the shelves of the reading room at

the Newspaper Library at Colindale. Michael Wolff declared, 'This clearly is the most important contemporary source of information'<sup>54</sup>.

Rival directories are Frederick May's *London press dictionary and advertisers' handbook* from 1871 (later *Willing's British and Irish press guide*) and *Sell's dictionary of the world's press and advertiser's reference* from 1881. There are isolated examples of earlier directories: for instance, Ward lists *Holden's triennial directory for 1805, 1806, 1807* which contained a list of London and county newspapers. Trade directories also list newspapers circulating in particular towns, as for example Bulmer's directory of North Yorkshire which lists newspapers flourishing in Middlesbrough and other towns in the North Riding<sup>55</sup>. It has to be remembered that these are advertising tools and their contents rely upon the information they receive. Certainly they contain ghost entries, it was commonplace for a potential newspaper or periodical to be registered prior to publication, and in some cases the title never appeared.

Crane states,

There are the ghosts – periodicals which get recorded but do not exist. A confusion of dates, a misnumbering of a title, an error as to printer and editors – and a ghost walks. For exorcism many careful monographs are needed and some of the wraiths can never be laid<sup>56</sup>.

## Union lists

The *British union catalogue of periodicals (BUCOP)* does not include newspaper titles first appearing after 1799, but it should not be forgotten that a

large number of provincial papers had long runs dating from the eighteenth century. The *Northampton Mercury* (1720) still exists but many titles have not survived, such as the *Ipswich Journal* which succumbed in 1902 after 178 years of publication. Despite its claim to include pre-1800 newspapers, the *Leicester Chronicle* 1782-1813 is not listed. The *Union list of serials* claims newspapers published after 1820 are not listed but according to Vann and VanArsdel, 'Although the exclusion of English newspapers published after 1820 is noted in a prefatory statement, a surprising number are included'<sup>57</sup>. This is true for a number of London papers but there is also an entry for the *York Observer* for 1822<sup>58</sup>.

### **Local Bibliographies**

There are numerous bibliographies of the press arranged by region or place, period or by special features. The list in Appendix 2 demonstrates the wide diversity of such bibliographies, either separately published, in *Notes and Queries* or in local periodicals. The nineteenth century was the age of the antiquarian bibliographer and a large number of county bibliographies appeared, most of which included a section on newspapers and periodical publishing in the locality. These are as varied in quality and accuracy as the bibliographies themselves but a number have proved extremely useful sources of information. They can be traced in the *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature*, Linton and Boston, Ward, Madden and Dixon or Larry Uffelman's bibliographies of press history, annual bibliographies in *Victorian Studies Review* or *Media History*<sup>59</sup> and, in some cases, in the introductory chapters to the various NEWSPLAN volumes<sup>60</sup>.

## **Finding lists**

The rise in interest in family history and the recognition of the importance of provincial newspapers for family history meant that a number of finding lists were published. Some such as that by Jeremy Gibson<sup>61</sup> ambitiously attempted to cover the whole country and were necessarily selective. Gibson is vague about starting dates, especially of eighteenth century titles. He based some of his work on the chapter in John West's *Town records*<sup>62</sup> and was able to remedy some of West's omissions, one of which was the exclusion of Middlesbrough newspapers. Other lists focused on a small area and could afford to include more titles. A number of local studies librarians compiled lists of local newspapers held in their authorities, such as Thwaite's list of Hertfordshire newspapers<sup>63</sup> and some were more ambitious and drew up union lists covering a wider area such as the North West region<sup>64</sup>.

More libraries are now placing information about their newspaper holdings on the Internet<sup>65</sup> to assist those wishing to consult them and there is no doubt that this will become increasingly important, if web sites such as the family history site, *Familia*<sup>66</sup>, add additional categories of information to the lists contributed by individual libraries.

## ***Bibliography of British Newspapers***

The diversity both in terms of quality and of availability of such lists meant that although it was possible to gain a clear picture of newspaper publishing in some areas, others were woefully neglected. In consequence the



*Bibliography of British newspapers* came into being. Apart from a few descriptions of its coverage and content, very little has been written about the *Bibliography of British newspapers (BBN)*. For this reason, it was necessary to conduct an interview with its general editor, Charles A. Toase, to find out the rationale behind the bibliography and how it came into existence. See Appendix 13.

There is no doubt that the *(BBN)* owes its existence to the endeavours of one man, Charles A. Toase. It arose out of his frustration as a librarian in finding out what newspapers existed at a given time and in a particular place. In 1963 there were few bibliographic resources to answer the simplest question about what provincial newspapers had been published. It is true that the BLNL had published its catalogue in 1905 and in 1920 Muddiman had produced the *TTH*. However, few libraries possessed copies of the *Newspaper library catalogue* and the much more widely available *TTH* relied heavily on the holdings of the British Museum.

There was a generally held view at this time that most local newspapers were in Colindale, but as later research revealed, this was far from true. Charles Toase was so convinced of the inadequacy of reliable lists of British provincial newspapers that he talked about the possibility of compiling bibliographies of British newspapers county by county to the committee of the Reference, Special and Information Section (RSIS) of the Library Association. He received a sympathetic response from RSIS who agreed to allocate some funds for the project. Toase then persuaded the British Library

of the benefits of the bibliography, and for their part they agreed to supply him with a microfilm of the card catalogue at Colindale. Copyfló supplied a print-out to Charles Toase in 1963 who became the General Editor of the project.

His first step was to conduct a countrywide survey of all local authorities to ask libraries to inform him what local newspapers they held from outside their county. The next step was to try to find county editors to be responsible for listing the holdings in their own locality.

Wiltshire was the first volume to be compiled and it appeared as a slim pamphlet published by RSIS in 1975. Although RSIS had a publications programme, it was clear that it did not have the resources to publish further volumes and the British Library agreed to publish future volumes. RSIS and its successor the Information Services Group (ISG) retained responsibility for the intellectual content.

Finding County editors has always been a major problem. With no offer of remuneration, the work had to be conducted on a voluntary basis. Initial approaches were made to county librarians to see if they could persuade librarians with responsibility for newspapers to become a county editor. The regional structure of RSIS meant that the regional sections became involved and in some cases were able to recommend suitable county editors. The General Editor had his own contacts and much of the early commissioning of county editors was done by personal contact and persuasion. Unfortunately the result of this, was that many of the volunteers fell by the wayside and

were non-productive. It is likely that many of them underestimated the amount of work that was required of them and the complexity of recording every single gap in a long run of newspapers is a daunting and time consuming task. Bibliographic description of newspapers is not straightforward and can demoralise even the most enthusiastic librarian. Because they were doing it on a voluntary basis, it was inappropriate to pressurize them for copy. In some cases, they have relinquished their responsibility for the bibliography but have deposited their working notes with the General Editor.

Despite being furnished with clear guidelines on what was expected of them, many editors were unequal to the task set. The General Editor indicated that the quality of work submitted varied greatly with some excellent returns and others that indicated reluctance to follow the preferred style and arrangement.

The main difficulty has been the small number of volumes that have reached fruition. Problems both with county editors and the British Library's publications programme meant that a regular programme of publishing has not been adhered to. The problem was exacerbated by the British Library's insistence that volumes should be published in pairs. As editor of the Leicestershire volume, DD was informed that unless an editor for Northamptonshire could be found, her work could not be published. Many other county editors had similar experiences and to date only eight counties have been covered.

In June 2003 the CILIP Information Services Group received Charles Toase's resignation from the *BBN* with considerable regret and he was thanked for his sterling efforts and achievements. The ISG National Committee approved the appointment of Diana Dixon as the new General Editor and was pleased that Charles Toase was prepared to remain as a Consulting Associate Editor<sup>67</sup>.

In some ways the bibliography became overtaken by another British Library initiative: NEWSPLAN which will be discussed in Chapter 7. Its published reports covering the whole of the United Kingdom and Ireland provide a full listing of newspaper titles in hard copy and microfilm in British and Irish libraries. As a bibliographic tool the information contained is invaluable and, with the exception of the London and South East volume, it is based on shelf checks of libraries, record offices and newspaper publisher's holdings. Nonetheless, it is not intended to be a substitute for *BBN* and it only lists newspapers in known locations, excluding those held overseas or those for which there is no known location. It is planned that the reports will form part of a national database of provincial newspapers in due course.

---

<sup>1</sup> C Walford (1883) The outline of a scheme for a dictionary of periodical literature. *The Bibliographer* 3, 121-23, 169-73; 4, 13-15, 38-48.

<sup>2</sup> (1712) 10 Anne c.29.

<sup>3</sup> A manuscript catalogue of the Burney Collection of Newspapers is available in BLNL. As a result of a microfilming initiative combining newspapers in the Burney collection and those in the Nichols collection in the Bodleian, S M Cox and J L Budeit (1983) *Early English newspapers 1622-1800*:

*bibliography and guide to the collection*. Woodbridge, CT and Reading: Research Publications lists the newspapers. It is also available at <http://microformguides.gale.com>

<sup>4</sup> (1905) *Newspapers published in Great Britain and Ireland 1801-1900*. Published as a Supplement to the *British Museum catalogue of printed books*. London: British Museum.

<sup>5</sup> J D Vann and R T VanArsdel (1978) 'Finding lists for Victorian periodicals', in J D Vann and R T VanArsdel (1978) *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. New York: Modern Language Association of America, 54.

<sup>6</sup> P E Allen (1975) *Catalogue of the newspaper library*. 8 vols. London: British Library.  
<http://bl.uk/collections/newspaper/services>

<sup>7</sup> P E Allen (1975) Volume 1. 'Introductory note'. (not paginated)

<sup>8</sup> The catalogue is discussed in Chapter 4.

<sup>9</sup> <http://copac.ac.uk>

<sup>10</sup> (1878-8) *Catalogue of newspapers in the Nichols collection of the Bodleian Library*. 2 vols.

Oxford: the Library, was the first attempt to list the holdings in the Bodleian. R T Milford and D M

Sutherland (1935) *A catalogue of British newspapers and periodicals in the Bodleian Library*.

Oxford: The Library, supplemented and augmented this list. The newspapers in the Nichols collection were microfilmed along with those in the Burney collection and are listed in S M Cox and J L Budeit (1983) *Early English newspapers 1622-1800: a bibliography and guide to the collection*. Woodbridge, CT and Reading: Research Publications.

<sup>11</sup> A number have produced printed catalogues, including: W J Minet and C J Courtenay (1901) *Catalogue of the collection of works relating to the County of Surrey*. Aberdeen: Aberdeen UP (this collection formed the basis of the Minet Library in Lambeth); (1918) *A catalogue of the Birmingham collection*. Birmingham: Cornish, (1931) Supplement 1918-1931. Birmingham: Cornish; (1932) *Local catalogue of material concerning Newcastle and Northumberland, as represented in the Central Library, Newcastle upon Tyne*. Newcastle: Reid; (1966) *Nottinghamshire: a catalogue of the county local history collection*. 3rd edn. Nottingham: Nottinghamshire County Library (first published 1953); (1928) *Catalogue of the Gloucestershire collection*. Gloucester: Gloucester City Libraries, and on a considerably smaller scale (1958) *Catalogue of the local history collection*. Huntingdon: County Library.

<sup>12</sup> W S Ward (1954) *Index and finding list of serials published in the British Isles, 1789-1832*. Lexington, KY: University of Kentucky Press, ix.

<sup>13</sup> A number of newspaper files, including some duplicates were irrevocably lost but according to Northamptonshire's local studies librarian it is has not been possible to ascertain the full extent of the losses.

<sup>14</sup> J Cooper Morley (1887) *The newspaper press and periodical literature of Liverpool*. Liverpool: Liverpool Weekly Mercury.

<sup>15</sup> I Maxted (2001) An early Exeter newspaper rediscovered. *Local studies newsletter*. September.  
<http://devon.gov.uk/library/locstudy/list360>

<sup>16</sup> J. G. Muddiman, comp. (1920) *Tercentenary handlist of English and Welsh newspapers, magazines and reviews* London: Times Publishing Company. (facsimile reprint Dawsons 1966).

<sup>17</sup> H G Pollard (1940) 'The newspaper', in FW Bateson, ed. *The Cambridge bibliography of English literature* Vol 3 1800-1900. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 795.

<sup>18</sup> Muddiman (1920), 14.

<sup>19</sup> S Bennett (1978) 'The bibliographical control of Victorian periodicals', in J D Vann and R T VanArsdel (1978), 27.

<sup>20</sup> (1921-22) Additions and corrigenda: *Times tercentenary handlist of newspapers. Notes and Queries* ns. 12, VIII, 13, 91-93, 173-7, 252, 476; ns 12, X, 191, 213, 261-4 all provided lists of additional provincial papers missed by the TTH. *ibid*, ns 12, VIII, January 8 1921, 13.

<sup>21</sup> (1921) *ibid*, ns 12, VIII, January 8,

<sup>22</sup> R Austin (1921) Replies. *Notes and Queries*, ns. 12, VIII, 91.

<sup>23</sup> *ibid*.

<sup>24</sup> A Sparke (1921) *Times tercentenary handlist of newspapers. Notes and Queries* ns 12, VII, February 26, 174.

<sup>25</sup> N Richardson (1921) *Times tercentenary handlist of newspapers. Notes and Queries* ns 12, VII, 171.

<sup>26</sup> Richardson (1921), 252.

<sup>27</sup> R Austin (1921), 91-3.

<sup>28</sup> A Briggs (1949) *Press and public in early nineteenth century Birmingham*. Oxford: Dugdale Society.

---

<sup>29</sup> S Bennett (1978), 27.

<sup>30</sup> G A Cranfield (1952) *A handlist of English newspapers and periodicals, 1700-1760*. Cambridge: Bowes and Bowes. Supplements were published in G A Cranfield (1956) *A handlist of English newspapers and periodicals, 1700-1760: additions and corrections*. *Transactions of the Cambridge Bibliographical Society* 1, 269-74 and R M Wiles (1958) Further additions and corrections to G A Cranfield's *A handlist of English newspapers and periodicals, 1700-1760*. *Transactions of the Cambridge Bibliographical Society* 2, 385-89. The supplements added few new titles but did add to the number of known locations.

<sup>31</sup> R M Wiles (1965) *Freshest advices: early provincial newspapers in England*. Columbus, OH: Ohio State University Press

<sup>32</sup> R S Crane and F B Kaye (1927) *A census of British newspapers and periodicals 1620-1800*. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press.

<sup>33</sup> W S Ward (1954) *Index and finding list of serials published in the British Isles, 1789-1832*. Lexington, KY: Kentucky University Press.

<sup>34</sup> M Wolff, J S North and D Deering, eds (1976) *The Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals 1824-1900* (Phase 1). Waterloo, Ont.: Wilfred Laurier University Press.

<sup>35</sup> H G Pollard (1940) 'The newspaper', in F W Bateson *The Cambridge bibliography of English literature* Vol. 2 1660-1800. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 689-733; H G Pollard 'Newspapers and magazines', Vol 3 1800-1900, 779-842.

<sup>36</sup> Crane and Kaye (1927) See note 32.

<sup>37</sup> Cranfield (1952), vii.

<sup>38</sup> *ibid.*

<sup>39</sup> E B Titus, ed. (1965) *Union List of Serials in the libraries of the United States and Canada*. (5 vols). 3rd edn. New York, Wilson, 420. Updated by *New Serial Titles* 1953-. Monthly with annual and quinquennial cumulations. J D Stewart et al, eds (1955-58) *British union catalogue of periodicals from the seventeenth century to the present day*. 4 vols. London: Butterworths.

<sup>40</sup> H & S Rosenberg (1971) 'Newspapers and magazines', in G Watson, ed. *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature*, Vol 3 1800-1900, cols 1755-1884.

<sup>41</sup> H & S Rosenberg (1968) 'Nineteenth century newspapers and magazines', *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* 1, 16-17.

<sup>42</sup> *Ibid.*, 16-17.

<sup>43</sup> A Jones, et al (2000) 'Newspapers and magazines', in J Shattock *The Cambridge bibliography of English literature* Vol. 3 1800-1900. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, cols 2849-2798.

<sup>44</sup> M Wolff et al (1976) See note 34.

<sup>45</sup> Wolff et al (1976) vii.

<sup>46</sup> *ibid.*

<sup>47</sup> *ibid.*

<sup>48</sup> *ibid.*

<sup>49</sup> Phase 2. J S North, comp. (1987) *The Waterloo directory of Irish newspapers and periodicals*. Waterloo, Ont.: Waterloo Academic Press; John S North (1989) *The Waterloo directory of Scottish newspapers and periodicals*. Waterloo, Ont.: Waterloo Academic Press; John S. North (1997) *The Waterloo directory of English newspapers and periodicals, 1800-1900*. 10 vols. Waterloo: Waterloo Academic Press.

<sup>50</sup> J S North (1997) 'Introduction', 13.

<sup>51</sup> Informal discussion with John North at the Research Society for Victorian Periodicals conference held at the Red Lion Inn, Portland, Oregon, 13 September 1996.

<sup>52</sup> P Davison (1971) 'Newspapers and magazines', in I Willison, ed, *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature*, Vol 4 1900-1950. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, cols 1329-1408.

<sup>53</sup> S Gliserman (1969) Mitchell's *Newspaper Press Directory*. *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* 4, 21-4. D Linton (1987) Mitchell's, May's and Sell's: newspaper directories of the Victorian era. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 3 (2), 20-8. There is a useful list of these in Pollard (1940) Vol.3, see note 35. The list mentions the useful [1890]-1915 *Handy newspaper list*. London: C & E Layton.

<sup>54</sup> Wolff (1968) 15.

<sup>55</sup> (1890) *Bulmers history, topography and directory of North Yorkshire*. Preston. T Bulmer lists newspapers under the heading for each town.

<sup>56</sup> Crane (1927), 6. These problems are discussed more fully in Chapter 4.

<sup>57</sup> J D Vann and R T VanArsdel (1978) 'Finding lists for Victorian periodicals', in J D Vann and R VanArsdel, 53. See note 5.



<sup>58</sup> E B Titus, ed. (1965) 420. See also note 39.

<sup>59</sup> D Linton and R Boston (1987) *The newspaper press in Britain: an annotated bibliography*. London: Mansell; D Linton (1994) *The twentieth century newspaper press in Britain*. London: Mansell; W S Ward (1972) *British periodicals and newspapers, 1789-1832: a bibliography of secondary sources*. Lexington, KY: Kentucky University Press.; W.S. Ward, (1974) Index and finding list of serials published in the British Isles, 1789-1832: a supplementary list. *Bulletin of New York Public Library* 77, 291-7; L Madden and D Dixon (1975) *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies, 1901-1971*. Toronto: Victorian Periodicals Newsletter (reprinted (1976) New York: Garland. L Uffelman (1995) *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies, 1972-1991*. Evansville, IL: Research Society for Victorian Periodicals. *Media History* (1998-) continues *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* (1984-1992) continued as *Studies in newspaper and periodical history* (1993-1995).

<sup>60</sup> NEWSPLAN. (10 vols). London: The British Library. *Report of the pilot project in the south west* (1986); *East Midlands* (1989); (1989) *Northern*; (1990) *North Western*; (1990) *West Midlands*; (1990) *Yorkshire and Humberside*; (1992) *Ireland*; (1994) *Wales*; (1994) *Scotland*; (1996) *London and South Eastern*.

<sup>61</sup> J S W Gibson (2001) *Local newspapers 1750-1920: England and Wales, Channel Island, Isle of Man: a select location list*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edn. Birmingham: Federation of Family History Societies.

<sup>62</sup> J West (1983) 'Provincial newspapers from 1690', in J West *Town Records*. Chichester: Phillimore, 224-71.

<sup>63</sup> M F Thwaite (1956) *Hertfordshire newspapers 1772-1955: a list compiled for the county bibliography*. Welwyn: Hertfordshire Local History Council.

<sup>64</sup> R E G Smith (1964) *Newspapers first published before 1900 in Lancashire, Cheshire and the Isle of Man: a union list of holdings in libraries and record offices within that area*. London: Reference Special and Information Section of the Library Association.

<sup>65</sup> A good recent example is that for Luton at <http://luton.gov.uk>

<sup>66</sup> <http://familia.org.uk/services>

<sup>67</sup> (2003) Minute of the Information Services Committee meeting June 24, AOB.

## **CHAPTER THREE**

### **BIBLIOGRAPHIC CONTROL OF CURRENT ENGLISH PROVINCIAL NEWSPAPERS**

#### **Introduction**

This chapter examines provision for the bibliographic control of current English provincial newspapers. Theoretically, because newspapers are subject to legal deposit, the British Library Newspaper Library (BLNL) catalogue should be an accurate reflection of the current state of British newspaper publishing, with all newspapers, however, local, represented. Unfortunately, this is far from the case. While paid-for titles are usually deposited without question, the situation regarding free newspapers is considerably more complex. The chapter will examine the collection policies of the BLNL because, unlike the other English copyright libraries which claim provincial newspapers very selectively, the BLNL aims to receive copies of all provincial newspapers through its legal deposit entitlements. However, it is necessary to determine what proportion of the current output finds its way into the BLNL in the light of some commonly held perceptions that a proportion of provincial newspapers avoid legal deposit.

This chapter also addresses the problem of deciding exactly what should be collected by the British Library and what, if anything, they should cease collecting. This problem is particularly important in the light



of the Smethurst report<sup>1</sup> and the fact that the British Library was seriously reviewing its collection policy of material regarded as ephemeral. In this context, newspapers containing a high proportion of advertising could be considered unsuitable for retention. This chapter examines the information content of these newspapers and considers a future collection policy for the British Library.

### **Legal deposit**

British current newspapers, like other published material, are subject to legal deposit and should be deposited with the British Library. The legal deposit procedure is slightly different for newspapers, as instead of being sent to the Boston Spa Copyright Receipt Office, they are sent to BLNL at Colindale. There, a special section at 120 Colindale Avenue is devoted to their acquisition and storage. On receipt, each unbound newspaper is checked in, before being shelved by title for a year, until being sent for microfilming. Each new title is added to the catalogue of the Newspaper Library<sup>2</sup>.

### **Bibliographic control**

Besides appearing in the BLNL catalogue, once a new newspaper title appears, the Copyright Receipt Office at BLNL notifies the *British National Bibliography (BNB)* and the first issue of the new title or a change in title is listed in the monthly classified sequence. Thus a recent issue contained an entry for '*The journal. Tamworth 2000-. Monthly. Merger of Tamworth, Lichfield and Chase Journal and Lichfield, Chase and Tamworth Journal and Sutton Coldfield and Walsall Journal*'<sup>3</sup>.

Information is sometimes slow to reach the *BNB* and it cannot be considered the most useful tool for tracing information about new titles.

Because newspapers depend heavily on advertising for survival, it is important that all new titles are listed in press directories so that would-be advertisers are alerted to their existence. There are three of these: *BRAD*; *Benn's Media Directory (Benn's)* and *Willing's Press Guide (Willing's)*<sup>4</sup>. For currency the most important is *BRAD* because it appears monthly, unlike the other two which are annual. Both *BRAD* and *Benn's* distinguish between national newspapers and regional newspapers listing them by county and then by town. *BRAD* also contains a section on new and discontinued titles, which is helpful for those wishing to keep informed about changes. *BRAD* listed eight new English regional titles and eleven deletions in June 2003<sup>5</sup>.

**TABLE 1**

**NUMBER OF LOCAL NEWSPAPERS LISTED IN BRAD APRIL 2000**

**REGION                      NO OF TITLES**

EAST ANGLIA	38
EAST MIDLANDS	124
NORTH	57
NORTH WEST	147
SOUTH EAST	449
SOUTH WEST	131
WEST MIDLANDS	127
YORKS & HUMB	110

In contrast to the other two directories, *BRAD*, categorises newspapers: listing newspapers purely consisting of advertising material separately for each region. This distinction is important in the context of the discussion on p.86 and for this reason a definition of newspapers that are primarily composed of advertising is relevant.

## **DEFINITION OF NEWSPAPERS PRIMARILY ADVERTISING**

1. Titles listed in *BRAD* as of purely advertising content, clearly fall into this category, regardless of whether or not they are paid for or free.
2. A small number of local newspapers, generally but not always free, contain less than 10% of their total content devoted to news or editorial material.

However, in some cases, the paper is the only source of news for a locality and the news content may fluctuate between issues. *BRAD* includes advertising newspapers titles, as well as those that have been discontinued or merged with other titles, which are listed in a separate sequence. The *Wirral News* series fell into this category, but the local news it contained was not duplicated elsewhere. See Appendix 3 for a list of these newspapers.

## **Free Newspapers**

Free newspapers have been a matter of concern to the BLNL for some time and as early as 1984 Stephen Green, then Head of the Newspaper Library, expressed his anxiety about the information content of free

newspapers to the Consultative Committee on Newspapers<sup>6</sup>. In 1991 Selwyn Eagle was commissioned to undertake a survey of free newspapers<sup>7</sup>. Both Green and Eagle recognised that free newspapers did have some information content.

By 1995 BLNL was concerned that its coverage, especially of free newspapers, was inadequate and requested each of the regional NEWSPLAN implementation committees<sup>8</sup> in England to furnish them with details of all free newspapers currently circulating in their areas. Some work was done by BLNL in 1996 and 1997 checking off titles against the lists submitted. Although returns were submitted by five regions: East Midlands; North West; South West; West Midlands and Yorkshire and Humberside, nothing was received from Northern and the LASER (covering London and the South East) implementation committees.

The initial returns from the committees suggested that BLNL held a relatively small proportion of titles listed. However, a number of titles no longer existed and others had changed their titles or had been merged with other titles. This meant that some of the missing titles could be accounted for.

**TABLE 2**  
**RETURNS FROM COMMITTEES OF FREE NEWSPAPERS**

REGION	Titles	No in BLNL
EAST MIDLANDS	240	63 (+ 12)
NORTH WEST	133	41 (+6)
SOUTH WEST	185	66 (+12)
WEST MIDLANDS	69	42 (+1)
YORKS & HUMB	77	36 (+5)

Figures in brackets refer to titles where there is uncertainty about a title, especially whether it is still being published.

The Smethurst report had recommended that BLNL should cease to collect newspapers that primarily consisted of advertising and that before any decisions could be taken BLNL needed to establish how many titles came into this category and how many of these were being taken by the British Library<sup>9</sup>.

In 1998 the British Library employed a consultant to investigate the advertising content of English local newspapers in order to establish priorities for collecting newspapers primarily containing advertisements. This work was undertaken by DD in the Spring of 1998 and a report was submitted to the British Library<sup>10</sup>.

It was necessary to begin by examining the regional returns from the NEWSPLAN implementation committees to discover what proportion of free newspapers were being collected by BLNL. These returns were

made available for DD to check against the most current and available editions of the three press directories *BRAD*, *Willing's* and *Benn's*<sup>11</sup> to verify if the titles still existed or if they had changed their names, so were listed under a different title. The absence of returns for Northern and the London and South East (LASER) NEWSPLAN regions meant that reliance had to be placed on checklists based on the press directories. These lists were used for the shelf check of titles in the Copyright Receipt Office at BLNL. Using the supplementary checklists drawn up from the directories, additional titles appearing since 1996/97 were identified. The marked up listings were checked off against the holdings on the shelves in BLNL to see if titles were still being collected. In a number of cases, titles that were reported as not being taken by the BL were found there. For a full list of the findings for all regions see Appendix 4.

While these are not large in number, they constitute an important aspect of regional newspaper publishing. Many of the titles in this category, such as the *Diamond Advertiser* series circulating in East Anglia and the Home Counties and the *Loot* series covering conurbations countrywide, are not free and generally retail between 80p and £1.30 a copy. However, others are issued free, and several such as the *Scan* series, appeared in the regional returns.

### **East Midlands**

Thus, in the East Midlands, the *Buxton Times*, the *Derby Trader*, the *Grantham Citizen*, the *Hinckley Journal* (now entitled the *Hinckley*

*Herald & Journal*), the *Kettering Herald and Post*, the *Long Eaton Trader*, the *Nottingham Recorder* and the *Suffolk Mercury North* are all being acquired although they were recorded as not being taken by BLNL. In some cases, queries on the returns were sorted out, particularly where the title changed or part of the title had been dropped, as in the cases of the *Boston Target*, the *Retford and District Guardian* and the *Stamford Herald and Post*. In a number of cases, titles have ceased publication, as for example, the *Lowestoft Midweek Journal*. This shows that the BLNL's holdings are considerably better than the original list of titles indicated.

### **North West**

A number of titles reported as not in BLNL were found to be there. These include the *Huyton with Roby Star*, the *Lancaster Citizen*, the *Lancaster Guardian* and the *Southport Midweek Visiter*. A query concerning whether BLNL did take the *Blackpool Citizen* or not was resolved after a title change had been discovered. Seventy six titles appearing on the original return from the regional NEWSPLAN Implementation Committee do not appear in current directories and may be presumed to be no longer in existence. The *Crosby Trader* and the *South Liverpool Merseymart* fall into this category. 57% of the original return accounted for titles that can no longer be traced, so that the BLNL's holding of forty four titles amounts to 77% of the titles listed. This clearly is a marked improvement on the original estimate of coverage. Overall some thirty five titles are added to the original list of

titles and the majority of these are held at BLNL with only 11% not being acquired.

## **South West**

The original returns from the NEWSPLAN implementation committee were exhaustive and covered a number of newspapers that clearly consisted primarily of advertising material. Titles such as *Friday Ad*, *Mature Tymes*, *Business Scene*, *Free Ad* and *Autotrader* were not held by the BLNL. Some ninety nine titles listed on the original return do not appear in the April 1998 issue of *BRAD* and it is likely that many are no longer in circulation. If this is true, the proportion of titles held in BLNL must be considerably higher than supposed, and is much better than initially believed.

As with the other regional listings, it was possible to resolve a number of queries. For example, the *Keynsham and District Advertiser* is likely to be the *Bath and Keynsham Advertiser*. It is not uncommon for titles to be changed, especially where a series of titles is produced by one publisher, in response to changing distribution patterns based on demographic change. Similarly, a number of titles recorded as not being held by the BLNL are on the shelves, as for example the *Devizes Star* and the *Trowbridge Star*.

A number of titles were traced in *BRAD* which were neither reported by the regional return and are not held by BLNL. Conversely, other titles



are held by the BLNL that did not feature in the return, including the *Yateley Courier*, *Bordon Times and Mail*, *Bournemouth Advertiser* and the *Exeter Leader*.

## **West Midlands**

Some seventy four titles have been traced of which eighteen are not in the BLNL. One new title was traced in *BRAD*, the *West Midlands Herald*, and this was not being received at Colindale at the time of the investigation. The original returns for this region omitted a number of titles from Solihull, Stratford upon Avon and Sutton Coldfield. Because of this it is difficult to make direct comparisons with the NEWSPLAN returns. Thirteen of the titles listed are no longer extant and the *Pink Paper* is regarded as a national rather than a regional publication and is held in the BLNL.

## **Yorkshire and Humberside**

The BL now holds some fifty one titles, representing a considerable improvement on the NEWSPLAN returns. As with the other regions a number of queries concerning doubts over titles have been solved. It is likely that the *Eckington Leader* is a version of the *Sheffield Leader*, the *Hull*, *Haltemprice and Holderness Advertiser* appears to have become the tri-partite *Hull Advertiser* and *Herald NY* is likely to be the *Harrogate*,

*Ripon and Knaresborough Herald*. The *Bridlington Free Press* is no longer a free paper.

Seventeen of the titles listed no longer feature in any of the press directories and can be presumed extinct. The *York and Scarborough Citizens* fall into this category.

**TABLE 3**

**BLNL HOLDINGS OF FREE NEWSPAPERS IN COMPARISON WITH LISTS  
DRAWN UP FROM NEWSPLAN RETURNS**

REGION	TITLES	IN BLNL	%
EAST MIDLANDS	128	91	71
NORTH WEST	88	70	79
SOUTH WEST	126	73	58
WEST MIDLANDS	74	56	77
YORKS & HUMB	68	51	75

TITLES refers to the titles traced using the returns from the NEWSPLAN regions.

These results show that, compared with the original returns from the NEWSPLAN Implementation Committees, the BLNL's holdings are considerably better for all regions.

## **London and South East and Northern**

The absence of returns from LASER and Northern regions meant that checklists drawn up from the press directories were used for a shelf check of titles at 120, Colindale Avenue. Appendix 5 shows which titles are being taken by the BLNL at present and which are not. For the LASER region BLNL takes 71% of the checked titles. For the Northern region 69% of titles are held. These figures are in line with the holdings of other regions.

## **Changes in newspaper publishing**

Because the returns were submitted some time ago, supplementary checklists drawn up from the directories including additional titles appearing since 1996/97, were also checked against the shelves.

The newspaper publishing market is extremely fluid, with new titles appearing and others ceasing publication occurring all the time. For instance, the April 1998 edition of *BRAD* lists the appearance of a new title, the *Dacorum Independent* and the cessation of two others.

Fortunately, the BLNL already had the *Dacorum Independent* on the shelves.

Similarly, title changes are frequent and can easily cause confusion. The *Leicester Trader* became the *Leicester Herald and Post* before ceasing publication, and then later reappeared as the short-lived *Leicester Trader TV Guide*. The large number of changes since the returns were submitted is a good indication of the volatility of newspaper publishing

and the need for constant review. It is clear that in most cases, the committees have faithfully recorded titles in their region, a number of which have escaped the pages of *BRAD*, *Benn's* and *Willing's*. For this reason, it seems appropriate to rely on the wisdom of local librarians to report changes in their region to the regional NEWSPLAN implementation committees

### **Sample of Newspapers to determine advertising content**

As stated on p.78, concern had been expressed in BLNL about the amount of information in free newspapers and whether BLNL should continue to acquire and archive them. In the absence of firm information about their information content, it was decided to sample a representative range of free and paid-for titles from throughout the country. One hundred newspapers taken at random from the shelves in the copyright receipt section of the BLNL were chosen.

Titles were selected from the non-standing order acquisitions for the week ending 28th February 1998, covering all titles acquired, from the letters A-L. Each title was examined to discover how many of its pages contained news or editorial features and how many consisted purely of advertising. Columns containing news items were measured and percentages were calculated in relation to the total content of each newspaper. Pages advertising forthcoming television or local entertainments were counted as advertising but personal announcements were counted as news or information content.

The results showed that 40% of all newspapers contained less than 30% of pages of news. Thirty four of the selected titles were free newspapers. See Appendix 7 for a list showing the proportion of advertising in titles in the sample.

Not surprisingly, the paper with only 8% of its pages containing news, the *Bucks Advertiser*, was free, and the three papers with the highest content of news were paid-for, the *Ashbourne News Telegraph*, the *Eastbourne Gazette* and the *Eastbourne Herald*. It would be easy to assume that the amount of news content was related to the price paid, but several titles containing over 50% of news content were free.

### **In Depth Sample of Advertising Content**

Three different areas were selected for a more precise analysis of the amount of advertising in local, and especially free, newspapers. The three areas represent a city, Leicester, a former Metropolitan county, Merseyside, and a predominantly rural county, Suffolk.

#### **LEICESTER**

For many years, local free newspaper publishing was dominated by the Trader group publications but these succumbed to competition rivalry from the Leicester Mercury group in the mid 1990s. Now there is no competition for the *Leicester Mail*, which with its variant local editions for suburbs in the surrounding area, circulates unchallenged. These local variants: the *Knighton and Humberstone Mail*, the *Oadby and Wigston*

*Mail* and the *Syston and Birstall Mail* have minimal changes in news and advertising between editions. Each of the three titles contained 86% of advertising with no variation between them. Although, a *Leicester Journal* is alleged to be in existence, its appearance is sporadic and it is not available in BLNL or in Leicester City Library.

## **MERSEYSIDE**

This area is based on the former metropolitan county of Merseyside, including the Wirral peninsula. The area is well represented by local weeklies, both free and paid-for, each with its own local character.

The principal series of free newspapers emanate from the *Wirral News* Group (publishing the *Birkenhead, Bromborough and Bebington, Hoylake and West Kirby, Neston and Wallasey News*), the Merseymart and Star series (the *Anfield and Walton, and the Maghull and Aintree Stars*, the *Huyton and Roby*, and *West Derby and Tuebrook Merseymarts* and the *BootleTimes* and *Crosby Herald*); and the Champion series (*the Formby, Maghull, Skelmersdale, and Southport Champions*). The principal paid for titles are the *Liverpool Daily Post* and the *Liverpool Echo*, and the *Southport Visiter*, with local variants. The *Southport Visiter* also produces a free newspaper, the *Midweek Visiter*.

Each title for the week of 6th March 1998 was examined for its advertising content, by measuring precisely the amount of advertising on each page of each newspaper. The results, expressed in a percentage of the total, are given in Appendix 8.

Papers from the *Wirral News Group* contain an extremely high advertising content, largely because although twenty of their eighty four pages contain some news, the papers also have substantial property and motor advertising supplements. Three paid-for titles, the *Wirral Chronicle*, the *Formby Times* and the *Southport Visiter*, all contain a much higher advertising content than any of the free newspapers, but the *Maghull Advertiser* contains a higher proportion than the others.

It would have been helpful to see if there were changes in advertising content for the same week in 1997. Although there was insufficient time to do a full analysis, the *Wirral News* series was examined. It was found that in 1997 these newspapers contained 83% of advertising content, compared with 91.5% a year later.

## SUFFOLK

Suffolk is a predominantly rural county, with three principal conurbations: Bury St Edmunds; Ipswich and Lowestoft. The county has two daily newspapers: the *East Anglian Daily Times* and the *Evening Star*. The main paid for weekly newspapers are the *Bury Free Press*, the *Lowestoft Journal* and the *Newmarket Journal*. The main free newspapers are the *Suffolk Mercury* series, with East, and West editions. Further subdivisions occur, with the *East Suffolk Mercury* having an Ipswich, Stowmarket and North edition; and the West having a Bury and a Sudbury edition.

The *Lowestoft Journal*, has a significantly lower advertising content than the free newspapers. However, the *West Suffolk Mercury* titles compare well with the *Newmarket Journal* in terms of advertising content. Appendix 9 lists the proportion of advertising found in Suffolk newspapers. As the sample was only for one week, it would be unwise to draw too many conclusions from this and it indicates more research is needed. Research over a longer period might show more differences. The sample excluded daily newspapers as in other areas.

A particular characteristic of local newspaper publishing in Suffolk is the existence of a number of well produced free community newsletters. Most of these are listed in *BRAD*, but the Southwold paper, the *Blyth Bugle* is not. Titles include: the *Felixstowe Town Crier*, the *Beccles Independent*, *Bungay Harleston and District Community News*, *Framlingham and Wickham Market Community News*, *Halesworth and Southwold Community News*, *Leiston*, *Saxmundham* and *Aldeburgh Community News* and the *Newmarket Weekly News*. Whilst the Suffolk Record Offices at Bury St Edmunds, Ipswich and Lowestoft attempt to maintain files of these, they appear sporadically and holdings depend on staff bringing in copies from home. These papers are printed on quality paper and contain local advertising as well as distinctly local news. The *Felixstowe Town Crier* contains 37% news. These newspapers were not sampled as they do not appear on a regular basis and often resemble monthly magazines rather than newspapers as such. This probably accounts for their not being acquired by BLNL.



### **Paid for advertising newspapers in the sample areas**

All three sample areas had paid for advertising newspapers circulating in their areas. *Loot - Liverpool, Chester, and North Wales* was widely available at £1 a copy on Merseyside, and *Loot - Leicester and Northants* retailed at 80p in Leicester. In Suffolk, *Anglia Diamond Free Ads* is widely available throughout the county. These papers do not contain news. Appendix 3 lists these.

### **Local series with variant pages**

It became clear, as newspapers in series were examined for their advertising content, that in many cases there were few differences in news content between variant editions. It seemed valid to investigate the differences as if changes were minimal this could affect whether they should be collected or not.

The newspapers of the Wirral News Group were examined in detail. For the week of 11th March 1998 all the six variant titles were checked. In all six, the same picture appeared on the front page. The lead story on all six front pages had a distinct local flavour but the second story was the same throughout. Nine of the news carrying pages were identical but localised news stories were provided on four pages, although some material was common to all. Some local material was duplicated in papers serving west Wirral: Heswall, Hoylake and West Kirby, and Neston, and other news was distinctive to the east: Birkenhead, Bromborough and Wallasey.

Overall, the amount of variation is small but it is distinctly local in character and it may be the only place where such information is recorded.

The *Champion* series revealed few differences in news between titles, apart from the *Skelmersdale Champion* which contains unique news that is not duplicated in the sister titles.

The *Leicester Mail* titles show that there is little, if any difference, between news in the Knighton and Syston editions, although the Oadby and Wigston edition covered a different, and local, feature on its cover page.

In Suffolk apart from one lead story and the banner, the *East Suffolk Mercury* is identical to the *North Suffolk Mercury* in all respects. The features, announcements and advertisements are identical.

A large number of series circulate in the Home Counties, and an examination of some of these reveals that there is considerable similarity between changed titles. The *Herald* series circulating in Beds, Herts and Essex tended to group titles together. Thus, the Ampthill and Bedford titles were identical in text and appearance, as were the Hoddesdon and Broxbourne titles, but other in the series contained different lead stories and local news. Likewise, in the *Extra* series, circulating in Kent, the front pages were identical in the Herne Bay and

Whitstaple editions, and also in the Canterbury and Faversham editions, with the limited news content being duplicated. Differences were found in the localised news, although the same lead story was used in several editions of the *Adscene* newspapers circulating in Kent.

Clearly a vast amount of material is being duplicated between the numerous series of local newspapers and this is an issue which deserves further consideration by the British Library. One of the difficulties with this type of material lies in establishing which is the lead title, to be used as the master from which changed pages from other titles in the series can be added. The difficulty is compounded by the fact that, as changes from the returns indicate, demographic changes cause publishers to respond by changing titles to reflect new distribution patterns.

Although decisions of this kind have been made with regional daily newspapers, such as the *Liverpool Daily Post* and the *Leicester Mercury* that final city editions are filed, with variant pages being microfilmed, the same criteria cannot be applied to local weeklies. It can also be argued that it would be sensible to retain the first edition as well as the final edition to ensure that future generations are not deprived of material to which they would otherwise be denied access.

It would be impractical and unrealistic to expect staff in the Copyright Receipt department to decide which title should be retained as the master file. Local studies librarians in the regions and publishers should

together have the necessary knowledge to recommend which title should be retained by BLNL. However, it is important that such decisions are regularly revised.

Bibliographic control of English local newspapers is still far from complete. Although the survey revealed that for most regions BLNL was receiving approximately 75% of all titles, there was a serious shortfall in the South West where only 58% was received. This suggests that legal deposit, especially of free newspapers is incomplete and although the findings are better than had initially been thought, there is still need for improvement. Perhaps 25% of all titles are not reaching BLNL and indications suggest that the situation is not much better locally.

Constant reference to the only monthly press directory, *BRAD*, is essential to keep reliable records on new and merged titles and cessations. Because most of the newspapers that escape the net are free, and therefore not available through conventional publishing outlets, it is essential that local librarians keep a vigilant eye on new titles and alert the BLNL. Expertise and specialist local knowledge rests with local librarians and they are in the best position to advise the BLNL on which titles should be retained and which should be discarded. It follows that they should also advise BLNL, via the implementation committees, on identifying the master title in a series.

---

<sup>1</sup>M Smethurst (1998) *Report of the working party on legal deposit*. London: British Library.  
(The Smethurst review)

- 
- <sup>2</sup> (1999/2000) Online catalogue of the collections in the British Library Newspaper Library Reading Rooms. *Newspaper Library News* (27), 1, discusses developments. .  
The catalogue can be accessed at <http://bl.uk/collections/newspapers/services>
- <sup>3</sup> (2002) *British National Bibliography*. Vol. 1. London: British Library, 149.
- <sup>4</sup> (1994-) *BRAD*. London: EMAP Business Publications (formerly (1964-) *BRAD: British Rate and Data*); (1846-) *Benn's media*. Tonbridge: Miller Freeman (formerly *Newspaper press directory*); (1896-) *Willings Press Guide*. Chesham: Waymaker. <http://intellagencia.com>
- <sup>5</sup> (2003) Births and deaths. *BRAD* (June), 4-7.
- <sup>6</sup> Minutes of the Consultative Group on Newspapers CG1984/4.
- <sup>7</sup> S Eagle (1991) *The collection and preservation of free local newspapers: a report on the problems with proposals for a national strategy*. London: British Library.
- <sup>8</sup> NEWSPLAN was based on the regional library systems in Britain who contributed part funding to the original reports. Once reports were published, implementation committees were set up for each of the ten regions. In England there are seven such regions, who now report to the national NEWSPLAN committee.
- <sup>9</sup> See note 1.
- <sup>10</sup> D Dixon (1998) Survey of newspapers primarily advertising journals: a report submitted to the British Library Newspaper Library. Unpublished.
- <sup>11</sup> See note 4.

## **CHAPTER FOUR**

### **BIBLIOGRAPHIC DESCRIPTION OF NEWSPAPERS**

This chapter aims to examine some of the problems associated with describing newspapers for the bibliographic record. Over the years libraries have generally catalogued newspapers according to the cataloguing conventions of the time. However, analytical or historical bibliographers have shown little interest in examining the physical structure of periodicals, let alone newspapers, and bibliographers such as McKerrow, Esdaile, Stokes, Bowers and Gaskell have all tended to ignore periodicals. There is no doubt that there is a need for all newspapers that have ever existed to be fully described to ensure that their publishing history is accurately recorded for posterity. However, newspapers present certain problems to bibliographers and it is the purpose of this chapter to examine these and to see whether descriptions in bibliographies and in catalogues reflect the complexities of newspaper history.

Fredson Bowers's explanation of the purpose of bibliography is as relevant to newspapers as to the books that he had in mind:

The methods of descriptive bibliography seem to have evolved from a triple purpose: (1) to furnish a detailed, analytical record of the physical characteristics of a book which would simultaneously serve as a trustworthy source of identification and as a medium to bring an absent book before a reader's eyes; (2) to provide an analytical investigation and an ordered arrangement of these physical facts which would serve as a prerequisite for

textual criticism of the books described; (3) to approach both literary and printing or publishing history through the investigation and recording of appropriate details in a related series of books.<sup>1</sup>

There is a distinction between the information provided in a catalogue and the detailed bibliographic analysis undertaken by historical bibliographers. Bowers clearly defines the purpose of catalogues,

Descriptive bibliography is an outgrowth of the catalogue, or handlist, a type of compilation which will always exist as one of the basic needs of scholarship. Although certain distinctions are sometimes made between a catalogue and a handlist (or checklist), it is convenient to treat the two forms as synonymous. Their primary purpose is to make available, a listing of books in a certain collection or library, or else in a certain field, such as a specific period, a particular type of literature, a definite subject, or an individual author. Noting the existence of these books is the end-all and be-all of a catalogue, and under ordinary circumstances only the minimum of identifying details is provided, as the author, title(abbreviated when necessary, the date and possibly the place of publication, and occasionally the format. Some catalogues may include the name of the printer or publisher, or both. The writer may compile his list partly from other catalogues and partly by personal examination of the books, supplemented by notes furnished by contributing librarians or scholars; but except in extraordinary cases he is not concerned with the textual history, circumstances of printing, or variation with issue (sometimes within edition) of the books listed<sup>2</sup>.

He goes on to say that descriptive bibliography is something quite different, pointing out that a full bibliographic description requires much more detailed analysis of the original.

Most users of newspapers simply need to know what titles exist for a particular place or period and where they may find them. A family historian wishing to ascertain whether a library holds the issues of a newspaper relevant to his research differs from a historian of printing or

of the press who is anxious to know what newspapers by a particular publisher or printer still exist. However, historians of newspapers and periodicals will require considerably more information. In particular, it may be important to identify names of editors, printers and publishers as well as information on title changes, mergers, absorptions and relationships with other titles to appreciate the historical significance of a particular newspaper. Unfortunately, limitations of space and time, as well as the cost deter the compilers of many lists of newspapers from providing this information.

Over the years there have been a few attempts to provide full descriptions of periodicals and newspapers, as for example, those in a series of publications in *Scottish Notes and Queries*<sup>3</sup> but most bibliographies of newspapers are little more than checklists giving only minimal information on the title and its variants, numbering, dates and in some cases locations. In the late nineteenth century Cornelius Walford devised a scheme to describe his collection of periodicals and newspapers. However, Walford seemed more concerned with classifying the material he collected, rather than with the form of the record, but he did devise a series of colour coded slips which would be compatible with those used in the British Museum Library<sup>4</sup>.

Although bibliographers like Cranfield were keen to provide a full record of the history of the newspapers they described, there have been lamentably few serious efforts to describe the publishing history of



English provincial newspapers in a systematic manner. The *Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals* Phase 1<sup>5</sup> only provided brief descriptions of each title and perpetuated many of the errors of the bibliographies and catalogues from which it was derived. The pre-1824 titles from the Waterloo database were transferred in 1971 to Robert Gosselink at Waterloo University and a file was built up of some 3,000 titles from the period 1700-1823. According to John Palmer the descriptors developed for the earlier period were more detailed than those for the Victorian section but it was decided not to adopt MARC cataloguing for the *Waterloo directory*<sup>6</sup>.

In the late 1970s the Research Society for Victorian Periodicals turned its attention to developing a manual for the bibliographic description of Victorian serials. This was intended to assist in the compilation of a project dear to Michael Wolff's heart of compiling a directory of key Victorian serials. The feeling was that it was essential to ensure titles were accurately and informatively described in a consistent manner. Accordingly, John Palmer of the British Library produced a draft manual in consultation with a Steering Committee of which DD was a member. This draft was presented to the annual conference of the Research Society of Victorian Periodicals in Philadelphia in October 1980 and was well received. Unfortunately, owing to the untimely death of John Palmer, the draft manual was never published. Nonetheless, it contained some useful material on describing newspapers and perhaps

sometime in the future it will be resurrected by the Society. It was intended to be,

a first attempt at a structural framework for systematic recording of the bibliographical histories of newspapers, periodicals, and all other serial publications ..., in a way suited to the needs of scholars and of the libraries that serve them<sup>7</sup>.

As a librarian, Palmer was well aware of the importance of reconciling the needs of research with machine readable library catalogues and wanted to establish a list of standards that would be compatible with the cataloguer's needs and those of the user. Cataloguing newspapers is fraught with problems and bibliographies are littered with the results of shoddy work and the failure to impose consistency. Palmer pointed out that newspaper cataloguing tended to be minimal, generally only containing sufficient information to distinguish one serial from another. It is therefore important to examine these problems in some detail in the hope of establishing some clear guidelines for describing newspapers. Palmer identified 'an unusual collective responsibility' involved in serial production, involving complex relationships between editors, proprietors, publishers and printers, and claimed that 'the bibliographical record can present the skeleton of this publishing history<sup>8</sup>. The *Bibliography of British newspapers* attempts to describe each newspaper title fully but seems to be more concerned with establishing a full location record rather than a detailed bibliographical record of publishers, printers and editors for each entry, and it falls short of providing a full history.

## **Establishing the form of the title**

One of the most difficult aspects of describing newspapers is ensuring that the title is correctly recorded. The British Museum 1908 *Cataloguing rules: author and title entries* advocated entry directly under the title and the *Anglo American cataloguing rules (AACR)* (1967) required a separate main entry for each title, or changed title. Rules for describing serials were substantially revised in the second edition of *AACR* in 1988 and took account of the International Standard Bibliographic Descriptions (S) (ISBD)<sup>9</sup> requirements. It should be noted that newspapers are not allocated ISSNs.

The British Library Newspaper Library practice differs from AACR 2 by providing a composite entry listing all title changes under one heading. There is a 'see' reference from each change to the main entry. The justification for this is that it is more convenient for users to access information in this way.

One of the problems is that many newspapers have an extremely complex publishing history and that over the years they have merged with other titles, in some cases with publishers purchasing the rights to extinct titles. Nineteenth century newspapers often had sub-titles and these too were liable to change, being dropped, being added, or simply altered. In the twentieth century, the same newspaper may appear in a variety of editions, all of which have slightly different titles. The *Walthamstow Guardian*, with its large number of variant local editions

and its numerous title changes, raises a shudder with the cataloguers at Colindale, because each local edition has a different title.

The Rosenbergs considered that establishing a correct form of a title posed particular problems for them when they compiled their entry in the *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature*,

We faced common problems of form, especially in how to present titles and sub-titles of newspapers. A particular difficulty frequently occurred when, upon amalgamation, a combined title of some length was fashioned to carry along with the other, and this historical appendage was then subordinated typographically before being dropped altogether<sup>10</sup>.

Palmer required the title proper 'be transcribed exactly as to order, wording and spelling and should not be abridged' and that it should be separated from the sub-title by a colon<sup>11</sup>.

Should cataloguers list the first known or the last known title as the main entry, with cross references? The decision reached has implications on how titles are presented in bibliographies. Traditionally American libraries favour entering changed titles under the most recent form and the British prefer the earliest form of the title. Thus, *BUCOP* listed titles under the first known title whereas the *Union list of serials* lists them under the most recent title. *The Bibliography of British newspapers* style sheet states that newspapers that have ceased publication are listed

under their earliest titles, while those currently published are listed under their latest titles<sup>12</sup>.

Establishing which title was the first may not be straightforward, particularly when the first issue is no longer available. The original first title may bear little resemblance to subsequent titles. For instance, *The Times* newspaper began life as the *Universal Daily Register*. The papers themselves do not make things easy with frequent title changing, even if of a minor nature. More general problems are presented by numerous changes such as the adding, dropping and adding again of such terms as "daily". Some interesting light on nomenclature of newspapers appears in *Progress of the British newspaper in the nineteenth century*,

A spade should be called a spade, according to the popular injunction, but apparently a newspaper should be called, "an Argus", a Star", an "Observer", a "Sentinel", anything, in fact, excepting what it is, - a newspaper. The commonest appellation is "Advertiser"; 160 newspapers in the United Kingdom are thus styled. There are 150 "Times", 149 "News", 128 "Gazettes", 120 "Chronicles", 119 "Heralds", and 102 "Journals. Rapid transmission of news is evidently a speciality of the 95 "Expresses", while the "Guardians" (70), and the "Observers" (65) doubtless exercise an unsleeping vigilance in the public interest<sup>13</sup>.

Interestingly, the 'Notes for county editors' of the *Bibliography of British newspapers* are evasive about tracing titles and ensuring a full bibliographic history is supplied. To do it effectively files need to be perused systematically to ensure no changes are missed. They are specific about capitalisation, preferring to avoid capitals, except in the case of proper names<sup>14</sup>.

Newspaper proprietors were often devious in their use of newspaper titles. Rosemary Wells cites a particularly interesting occurrence in eighteenth century Bristol where two newspaper proprietors, Andrew Hooke and Felix Farley, alternated the titles of their newspapers each week, in an attempt to evade Stamp Duty. Between 1743 and 1745 Andrew Hooke's *Bristol Oracle and County Intelligencer* alternated with the *Bristol Oracle and County Advertiser* and F. Farley's *Bristol Journal* alternated with *Farley's Bristol Advertiser* between 1744 and 1746. 'We do not know the immediate result of this dodge...but we do know that they have presented us with a bibliographer's nightmare'<sup>15</sup>.

Sometimes newspaper publishers purchased rights to a defunct title, to convey an impression of longevity that the new title did not possess, by claiming a link to a predecessor's heritage. Other proprietors have inserted spurious claims in the *Newspaper Press Directory* claiming links to distinguished but dead titles, as for example when a revived *Berkshire Chronicle* attempted to link itself with an eighteenth century predecessor of the same title.

Newspaper titles are easily ascertained from the masthead which is generally in large letters at the top of the first page. This may indicate affiliations, while sub-titles may sometimes reveal which other titles have been amalgamated with them. In some cases additional information, such as the name of the publisher and frequency, will be added to the masthead. However, Palmer pointed out,

It is dangerous to rely on the title pages issued by the publishers of periodicals and particularly of newspapers, to the neglect of other areas which often give more copious and accurate information.<sup>16</sup>

In particular he drew attention to the fact that subtitles of newspapers are often omitted from the masthead or, as he preferred to name it, the 'head title'. He wanted researchers to look at editorial pages as well as the colophon on the last page of most newspapers.

### **Dating newspapers**

Establishing the starting date of a newspaper, especially of an eighteenth century title is more difficult than it seems. If the first issue is not there to prove conclusively that it first appeared on a given date, it is hard to date it with any real accuracy. In 1940 *Berrow's Worcester Journal* proudly celebrated two hundred and fifty years of publication. However, it is impossible to substantiate that it first saw the light of day in 1690 and the dating of the *Lincoln, Rutland and Stamford Mercury* is equally contentious<sup>17</sup>. This title claims continuous publication back to 1695 but the probable earliest known copy dates from 27 August 1713. W.H. Allnutt, writing in *Bibliographica* stated,

Another claim has been much persisted on behalf of Stamford that a newspaper called the *Stamford Mercury* was started there in 1695. The earliest number of the *Stamford Mercury* extant appears to be that for Thursday January 5 1715/6, being the commencement of volume VII<sup>18</sup>.

Allnutt referred to the researches of Joseph Phillips who had established that the *Stamford Mercury* was published in half yearly volumes, and was therefore not started until January 1712/3.

The *Stamford Mercury* was originally published in half-yearly volumes, and was so published up to the end of 1730 - in all thirty-six half-yearly volumes were published. No earlier volume is known than volume VII commencing Thursday, January 5 1715/16. This would make January 3, 1712/3, the commencement of the paper. In January 1731 the paper was first printed in one yearly volume and a fresh numbering was begun, and the volume for 1731 is no.1.<sup>19</sup>

It seems likely that the myth was perpetuated by its proprietor in 1826 claiming that by working backwards from the issue of July 7 1826 the paper had been in existence for 6, 833 weeks, which brought it to February 11 1695. The paper of July 7 1826 carried the following editorial in an attempt to explain why June 30 1826 was numbered 4971, vol. 195 and why the following week it was No 6833, vol 131,

It may be useful to some of our readers to state that vol. 131 and No. 6833 which stand at the head of our paper denote the number of years and weeks for which the *Stamford Mercury* has been printed. One of our predecessors in the property, on succeeding to it after the paper had been printed weekly for nearly 40 years, thought proper to recommence the numerical distinction, beginning again with no.1, and from his time the progression has been regularly observed, until the number of the present week would have been 4972, but we have availed ourselves of enlarging our paper to add together the two series of numbers and thus to show the whole period during which the *Mercury* had been printed, viz, 131 years or 6,833 weeks<sup>20</sup>.

Phillips deduced that,

Thus, to 95 yearly volumes, 36 *half*-yearly volumes were improperly added, and in 1826 the paper had been printed



113 , and not 131 years.

Later the *Newspaper Press Directory* accepted 1695 as the starting date and the myth continued. All this goes to show that without the physical presence of the very first issue, it is easy for erroneous dating to occur and that extreme caution needs to accompany any dating of early newspapers.

To compound the problems, unscrupulous printers sometimes enhanced the numbering to suggest papers had a longer life than they did.

Rosemary Wells<sup>21</sup> cites the example of the first issue of the *Exeter Gazette* on June 21 1792 which was numbered 1024, indicating that it was a well-established title, however, its editorial made it clear that it was a new newspaper. Allnutt located no 348 of the *Norwich Post* in Bagford's papers in Harleian Manuscripts in the British Museum Library. This was dated from Saturday April 24 to Saturday May 1st 1708, so that 'a computation of the weekly numbers back from this date gives the date of No. 1 as early in September 1701'<sup>22</sup>. Norah Richardson also pointed out the problems associated with the numbering of two eighteenth century newspapers,

The numbering quoted - see especially *Adam's Weekly Courant* and the *British Oracle* - forms when compared with the 'Handlist', an interesting object lesson as to the absolute unreliability of early eighteenth century numbering, particularly that of the provincial press, and shows how unsound is the apparently easy method of arriving back at a presumable first number by counting back from an existing one<sup>23</sup>.

Rosemary Wells thought that some problems were accidental.

Sometimes it may simply have been a typographical error as when the *Wellington News* vol 125, no 19 for May 11 1983 jumped back to vol. 105, 20 in the next issue. She also suggested that sometimes 9 was substituted for 6 and concluded that 'Newspaper publishers are notoriously inaccurate in their numbering, either deliberately or otherwise'<sup>24</sup>. Other pitfalls may include deliberate problems with numbering, for instance in 1948 in order to obtain a greater paper ration, the proprietor of the *Gateshead Times* which had reached its 75th number purchased rights to the defunct *Gateshead Weekly Pictorial Post* to comply with rationing regulations and continued the paper as the *Gateshead Post* running from number 15<sup>25</sup>.

A number of newspapers, especially in resorts, were only produced during the season when visitors were there and did not appear all the year round. Thus the *Saltburn Weekly Times* was published in the summer only between June 2 1887 and October 13 1900 before becoming a weekly published throughout the year.

Other complications are caused by the change in the calendar in the British Isles in the eighteenth century. The official change from the Julian to the Gregorian calendar was enacted by an Act of Parliament (24Geo.II. c.23) in 1751. The last day of the Julian, or Old Style calendar, was Wednesday 2 September 1752. This removed eleven days and 14 September 1752 followed with the introduction of the new

calendar. The official beginning of the year was moved from 25 March to 1 January so that a newspaper published on February 14 1749 would be February 14 1750 if the new calendar was used.

An added complication in dealing with eighteenth century newspapers is that they are often identified by two dates, two or three days apart.

Usually the first date reflects when the news began to be collected (normally the date of publication of the previous issue), and the second date is the actual date of publication. John Palmer also draws attention to 'a more unusual system where the former is the day of publication and the latter that when the next issue can be expected'. He advocates,

Such double dates should be joined by a slash and the actual date of publication added in brackets, e.g. No 1 (20/22 [=22] Jan 1732- no 793 (1 Fe 1823))<sup>26</sup>.

The two systems can be distinguished by examination of the news content which should make it perfectly clear which date is which. Where two dates are given, in the *Bibliography of British newspapers* county editors are asked to use the second date as this is likely to be the date of publication. Numbering, date of publication and frequency are generally found on the masthead of the paper. In the style sheet of the *Bibliography of British newspapers*<sup>27</sup> county editors are advised to be careful about the dates of newspapers published before 1753. They are reminded that the new year started on March 25th in the first half of the eighteenth century with an example showing that March 19th 1734 and March 26th 1735 are probably consecutive. If in doubt editors are required to check Cheney's *Handbook of dates*<sup>28</sup>. Palmer was

concerned about the complexity of dating newspapers. His manual contains not only a full description of old style dating and the Julian calendar along with information on non-Christian, Hebrew, Muslim and French Revolutionary calendars. He pointed out the difficulties of exact dating,

In the case of weeklies and non-daily newspapers it is important to relate the time to the correct day of publication, which is sometimes not the same as that printed as the designation of the issue, especially in those papers which published a chronological succession of editions of each issue, which might run, for a paper nominally published on Saturday or Sunday, from the preceding Wednesday to the following Tuesday.<sup>29</sup>

His remedy was to give the nominal day or time as printed and to put supplementary or additional information gleaned from external sources in brackets.

Pagination was considered an optional requirement by Palmer and could be simplified to state minimum and maximum over a period e.g. pp. 4-8 or 'usually 8p.' Additionally information on price was regarded as mandatory and should include the price of each issue<sup>30</sup>.

### **Publisher details.**

Bibliographic description of books requires full details of the imprint to be recorded, including the place of publication and the name of the publisher. Most library catalogues of newspapers regard place of publication as the main point of entry and it is an essential element of newspaper description. However, they generally ignore details of the

**publisher and printer, which may be of considerable importance to historians and bibliographers. As the example of Bristol newspaper publishers, discussed above, reveals there may be important links between titles that this information reveals.**

**Fortunately, for bibliographers of newspapers, the Stamp Act of 1798 (38 Geo. III.c.78) meant that newspapers had a legal obligation to include the names and exact addresses of printers and publishers (both business and private). The legislation required the publisher or printer to sign his name and address in manuscript at the top of the first page of the copy sent to the Stamp Office within six dates of publication. This signature and the colophon were regularly checked against an affidavit sent to the Registrar of Newspapers at Somerset House. This means that the colophon of a newspaper generally contains a reliable statement giving the name and address of its printer and/or proprietor and is an invaluable source of information. There is no conformity about whether or not the name of the proprietor is given, as this was not required by the Stamp Act, but frequently it is stated. It also provides useful, supplementary information such as names of agents receiving subscriptions and advertisements, and distributors of the newspaper. Editorial information, giving the name of the editor may appear on the masthead of the newspaper and in some cases the name of the proprietor appears here.**

## **Editorial**

The political and religious affiliations of newspapers are an important aspect of newspaper publishing. Early nineteenth-century newspapers adopted strong political affiliations which influenced the way in which news was reported and commented upon. For this reason, editorial statements are an invaluable source of information to historians.

Generally the first issue of a new title contained an editorial statement expressing the political allegiance of the paper and its intended readership. Of course, these are eulogies extolling the virtues of a new venture but some of the information is invaluable if one is trying to examine political or religious attitudes in a particular community in a given period.

## **Prospectuses**

While the first issue of a newspaper contains some editorial statement, another valuable source of information is the separately published prospectus, announcing the new publication. There are extensive collections of prospectuses in the John Johnson Collection at the Bodleian Library and also in the British Library, as well as in Newcastle Public Library. When DD was collecting information for the *Nineteenth century press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies* in the 1970s, she travelled to a large number of English libraries to record all the available information on newspaper history, including nineteenth century

newspaper prospectuses. It was planned that a companion volume covering the nineteenth century would be prepared by Henry and Sheila Rosenberg, with whom this information was deposited but this has never materialised. The research uncovered a number of prospectuses in English provincial libraries and these should always be consulted by those interested in the history of a particular newspaper as they reveal political affiliations and the aspirations of the proprietors. However, a note of warning follows, as the issuing of a prospectus is no guarantee that the newspaper was ever published. It should also be remembered that in order to protect a title a proprietor sometimes brought out a single registration issue with no subsequent issues.

Newspapers are a remarkably informative source of information in their own right especially as far as imprint details are concerned. Problems arise because of uncertainties in dating and because so many early issues of newspapers have not survived and the record is no longer available to be consulted. Histories and bibliographies of newspapers may help to fill the gaps but they must always be treated with a certain amount of caution.

### **Additional information**

Whilst the main concern of this chapter is with obtaining accurate information about a newspaper from the physical copy, a considerable amount of useful historical information can be gleaned from external historical and bibliographical sources. Where these exist it is helpful to

note them along with the existence of indexes. County editors for the *Bibliography of British Newspapers* are required to list historical and bibliographical sources, including jubilee and centenary supplements. If an unpublished account exists, (e.g. a thesis or a manuscript), editors should give its location. A number of press bibliographies, such as Madden and Dixon or Linton<sup>31</sup> will provide information and DD's recent review of sources for press history in *Media History* gives guidance in locating source material, published and unpublished<sup>32</sup>. John Palmer's draft manual contains an extremely helpful section on sources apart from the serial itself, including Stamp Office Registration Documents, Newspaper Stamp Duty Ledgers, Advertisement Duty Accounts, Registers of Copyright and Miscellaneous Public Documents, Royal Literary Fund Files, Publishers Archives and Other Manuscript Collections and Printed Narratives<sup>33</sup>.

### **Location of copies**

Although a bibliography does not have to include location details, these are of enormous value to those trying to use copies of the material cited. *BBN* locates all known surviving copies of titles in Britain and overseas and this is its particular strength. It also indicates where there are no known surviving copies of a title and the source from which the information was derived. Ideally, detailed holdings should be recorded, indicating gaps in runs, so that wasted journeys are not made to view incomplete files. This is a stated objective of the *BBN*,



To locate files, both permanent and temporary (including single copies), giving full details where incomplete, and distinguishing between originals and microfilm.<sup>34</sup>

## Cataloguing

Major collections of newspapers are generally catalogued to the highest standards in accordance with ISBD (S). Since all major institutions now catalogue in machine readable form, the records follow established formats. Certainly, the BLNL's records are compatible with MARC 21 although it is currently cataloguing to a modification known in the British Library as NL MARC. With the implementation of the integrated BL catalogue in the near future BLNL's records will be migrated to MARC 21.

Cataloguing in the BLNL has evolved differently from that in the rest of the British Library. Unique in-house guidelines for cataloguing newspapers were devised and followed, but over the years they have been modified in accordance with practice and precedent. Newspapers are rarely treated as a separate entity by cataloguing codes. AACR 2 treats newspapers along with serials and no special rules exist for them<sup>35</sup>.

At the 1987 conference of the IFLA Working Group on Newspapers draft *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers* were presented for discussion. They 'are intended to identify cataloguing and holdings data necessary for the creation of newspaper records which

would fully satisfy needs relating to access and accuracy of description, and which could be used worldwide<sup>36</sup>. They specified requirements for item identification, bibliographic description, and location information needed for creation and exchange of newspaper records with the purpose of facilitating compatible newspaper cataloguing worldwide. Appendix 10 shows the data elements required for creating manual records. They were meant to be used for current and retrospective cataloguing of newspaper collections, compiling union lists and bibliographies of newspapers, and to allow input of records into automated databases and to enable international exchange of newspaper records. Throughout the guidelines reference was made to then current and relevant international standards and UNIMARC and the newspaper data elements for manual records were based on ISBD(S) and for machine readable records in the UNIMARC format<sup>37</sup>. The document was meant to supplement appropriate national and international cataloguing codes and communications format tables and to be used in conjunction with them. Provision was made for making separate entries for newspapers reproduced in microform.

A number of examples were provided to demonstrate the differences between newsprint and microfilm for manual and automated records. A detailed table was also supplied for including UNIMARC records<sup>38</sup>. Currently, these guidelines are due to be revised as one of the activities of the recently renamed IFLA Section on Newspapers and a working

party is due to be appointed and to begin work in the near future. The project is under the direction of Edmund King, Head of BLNL.

Nonetheless, commendable as detailed cataloguing description is, it does not satisfy the needs of the researcher who in an ideal world would like to have all changes of printer and publisher included in the record, along with changes in frequency and in place of publication. It is of course beyond the scope of libraries to provide such information and there is a need for bibliographers to be assiduous in recording these details.

This chapter shows that there is a long way to go before the provincial press of Britain has its bibliographic history recorded adequately. Although it is a highly complicated document and contains much that is not relevant for the bibliographic description of newspapers, John Palmer's manual deserves publication. For newspapers, simplified guidelines to alert county editors to the major pitfalls in describing newspapers should be prepared by the General Editor for implementation in all future volumes of the *Bibliography of British Newspapers*. New draft guidelines to assist county editors of the *BBN* have been drawn up by DD and can be found in Appendix 12.

---

<sup>1</sup> F Bowers (1949) *Principles of bibliographical description*. New York: Russell and Russell, 'Foreword'.

<sup>2</sup> Bowers (1949), 3.

<sup>3</sup> *Scottish Notes and Queries* (1889-1905) made a special feature of recording lists of newspapers for Scottish cities which set a new standard for researching editorial histories of newspapers and periodicals. Those for Edinburgh were especially commendable.

- 
- <sup>4</sup> C Walford (1893) The outline of a scheme for a dictionary of periodical literature. *The Bibliographer* 3, 121-3. Walford's plans are discussed more fully in Chapter 1. .
- <sup>5</sup> M Wolff, J S North and D Deering (1976) *Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals 1824-1900*. Waterloo: University of Waterloo Press.
- <sup>6</sup> J Palmer (1980) Manual for the bibliographical description of serials. Presented at the annual conference of the Research Society for Victorian Periodicals Philadelphia 24-25 October 1980. Unpublished.
- <sup>7</sup> Palmer (1980), 3.
- <sup>8</sup> *ibid*, 4.
- <sup>9</sup> (1980) *International standard bibliographic description of serials ISBD (S)*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edn. London: IFLA International Office for UBC.
- <sup>10</sup> H & S Rosenberg (1968) Nineteenth century newspapers and magazines. *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* 1, 16-17.
- <sup>11</sup> Palmer (1980), 52.
- <sup>12</sup> (1996) Notes for county editors: Bibliography of British newspapers 10th revision August 1996. Unpublished.
- <sup>13</sup> (1901) 'Newspapers and their nomenclature', in *Progress of the British newspaper in the nineteenth century*. London: Simpkin and Marshall, Hamilton, Kent, 208.
- <sup>14</sup> This means that while Argus, Mercury and Iris require capitalisation, sentinel and star do not because they are not derived from proper names. (1996) Notes for county editors, 3.
- <sup>15</sup> R Wells (1986) *Newsplan: report of the pilot project in the south west*. London: British Library, 5.
- <sup>16</sup> Palmer (1980), 23.
- <sup>17</sup> An interesting discussion on the various claims to be the first English provincial newspaper can be found in W H Allnutt (1895) The first English provincial newspaper. *Bibliographica* 2 (7), 294-7 in which he refutes the claims for Worcester and Stamford and provides documentary evidence that the *Norwich Post* was the first.
- <sup>18</sup> W H Allnutt (1895), 295.
- <sup>19</sup> J Phillips (1878) *Notes and Queries* 5th ser. 10, 214-5
- <sup>20</sup> (1826) *Stamford Mercury*, July 7, 3. Quoted in Phillips (1878), 215.
- <sup>21</sup> Wells (1986), 24.
- <sup>22</sup> W H Allnutt (1895), 296.
- <sup>23</sup> N Richardson (1921) *Times tercentenary handlist of newspapers. Notes and Queries*, 12 ser, 7, 252.
- <sup>24</sup> Wells (1986), 24.
- <sup>25</sup> This is described by D Parry (1989) *NEWSPLAN. Report of the project in the Northern Region*. London: The British Library, 133.
- <sup>26</sup> Palmer (1980) 47.
- <sup>27</sup> (1996) Notes for county editors, 4. See note 12.
- <sup>28</sup> R H Cheney (1945) *Handbook of dates*. London: Royal Historical Society.
- <sup>29</sup> Palmer (1980), 65.
- <sup>30</sup> Palmer (1980), 66.
- <sup>31</sup> These are discussed in detail in chapter 2.
- <sup>32</sup> D Dixon (2003) Navigating the maze: sources for press history. *Media History* 9 (1), 83-91.
- <sup>33</sup> Palmer (1980), 28-35.
- <sup>34</sup> (1996) Notes for county editors, 1. See note 12.
- <sup>35</sup> (1988) *Anglo American cataloguing rules*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edn. London: Library Association.
- <sup>36</sup> (1988) H Komorous and R B Harriman *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers*. München: K G Saur, 2.
- <sup>37</sup> (1980) *International Standard Bibliographic Description for Serials*. See note 9.
- <sup>38</sup> H Komorous and R B Harriman (1988), 2.

## **CHAPTER FIVE**

### **INDEXING PROVINCIAL NEWSPAPERS**

Librarians are well aware that one of the main issues with newspaper collections is the lack of comprehensive indexes. Collections may have been indexed in part or not at all - only rarely has comprehensive indexing been sustained throughout an entire collection<sup>1</sup>.

This chapter traces the history of newspaper indexing. Because users of newspapers often find it difficult to ascertain whether or not a particular provincial newspaper has been indexed or not, the purpose of this chapter is to discover what indexes of provincial newspapers exist by examining the current state of indexing of provincial newspapers in England. It updates surveys conducted by the British Library Newspaper Library (BLNL) in the 1980s. It also aims to look at current practice in newspaper indexing with the intention of drawing up a list of points to consider to assist those new to indexing local newspapers in public and other libraries.

#### **Why index newspapers?**

Newspapers appear frequently and contain information which is densely packed in columns. Many provincial newspapers have long histories and those using older newspapers may need to scan many copies if they are searching for particular pieces of information. Considerable time can be saved if readers are able to consult reliable indexes to locate the information they need.

It is timely to consider why libraries should devote considerable time and energy to indexing newspapers. Stephen Green, formerly of the British Library Newspaper Library, lamented, 'users of newspaper collections are plaintive and frustrated by the lack of suitable published indexes to most newspapers'<sup>2</sup>. Despite the fact that newspapers are not always accurate, or unbiased in their reporting of events, Herbert Rice felt that,

Although the newspapers of years ago are commonly not considered to be the best sources for unbiased and objective history they are of great value since they contain much factual information not available elsewhere. As with other sources of information the student of history must evaluate newspaper data or risk acceptance of information at face value that is likely to be inaccurate or untrue<sup>3</sup>.

Rice spent some seven years indexing the *Milwaukee Sentinel* and his words prefaced a survey of newspaper indexing in the United States which was based on a questionnaire survey of 800 libraries in the United States<sup>4</sup>. Interest in newspaper indexing had emerged much earlier in the United States than elsewhere. As early as 1893 the American Library Association recognised the need for newspaper indexes but the impossibility of the task was expressed by R R Bowker who wrote,

To index newspapers of the past as Dr.[William Frederick] Poole has indexed periodicals ... would be practically impossible valuable as such an index would be<sup>5</sup>.

However, under Bowker's direction, a plan to index newspapers in eight to ten daily American newspapers as a cooperative venture began in

1894 and was published as the *American Literary Index* until 1904. In the 1920s a plan to index state newspapers was initiated in Michigan but it only lasted just over a year from 1925-26, failing because it was too expensive.

In 1942 H A Friedman wrote *Newspaper indexing* which was highly regarded and provided the model for subsequent indexing manuals<sup>6</sup>.

'The Friedman manual was a landmark publication for newspaper indexing and still should be used by an indexer' declared Koch<sup>7</sup>.

Friedman's manual remained the only guidance for newspaper indexing until two manuals were produced in the 1970s. Esther Perica produced a slim volume, *Newspaper indexing for historical societies, colleges and high schools*<sup>8</sup> in 1975 and this was followed in 1976 by J M Einhorn's *Guidelines for indexing local newspapers*<sup>9</sup>. Koch was of the opinion that 'The Perica and Einhorn manuals contribute very little new information and would be adequate only for the most modest indexing projects'<sup>10</sup>.

The publication of both manuals in the 1970s came at a time when there was a flurry of activity in newspaper indexing in the United States and the United Kingdom. Directed at historical societies, Donald R Smith produced *Newspaper indexing for small libraries*<sup>11</sup>. It included guidelines for selecting what to index, use, indexing, filing and a bibliography. More recently in the United States, Barbara Semonche produced an extremely helpful chapter entitled 'Newspaper indexing policies and procedures' in *News media libraries: a management handbook*<sup>12</sup>. Along with other writers, Semonche advocated indexers

should refer to the chapter on indexes in the 14<sup>th</sup> edition of the *Chicago Manual of Style*<sup>13</sup>. Both the American Society of Indexers and the Australian Society of Indexers maintain informative web sites<sup>14</sup>.

### **What has already been done in the United Kingdom?**

Newspaper indexing is not a new activity and attempts were made to index the *Spectator* and the *Tatler* in the eighteenth century. There are several examples of newspaper indexes dating from the nineteenth century. A little known and short-lived index was *Curtice's index to 'The Times', the London morning and evening papers, one hundred and twenty weeklies and thirty one provincial newspapers*<sup>15</sup> which covered the period July-September 1893 before being discontinued. It then became part of the Roeike and Curtice's press cuttings agency. Pride of place must go to *Palmer's index of the Times newspaper* which along with the *New York Times Index* in the United States serves as a model for most other newspaper indexes<sup>16</sup>. Inevitably most attention has focused on national newspapers with large circulations and in recent years most of the major national daily broadsheet newspapers have started indexes<sup>17</sup>.

### **Provincial newspaper indexes**

In Manchester, the *Manchester Guardian* was indexed into heavy leather bound volumes from the early 19th century to 1928 when a card index began. Between 1993 and 1994 Adam Matthew Publications produced a microfiche of the working indexes to the *Manchester Guardian* 1829-1972 based on the card indexes in the Guardian



Archives held by the John Rylands Library. Although a number of examples of local newspaper indexing survive from the nineteenth century most local newspapers have been poorly served. A rare exception is a published index compiled by the newspaper's staff to the *Folkestone Chronicle*<sup>18</sup>. The British Library Newspaper Library (BLNL) has on file a database of newspaper indexing activity in the United Kingdom based on two surveys conducted in 1981 and 1985 which revealed that newspaper indexing of local papers was considerably more widespread than had hitherto been realised, but that the indexes vary greatly in their scope and time spans. Frances Tait commented,

Newspaper indexes come and go-the compilers usually defeated by the high-cost, labor intensive task, and this applies particularly to the local press. The BL Newspaper Library has a record of over 1000 indexes, most of them unpublished and transitory, and often dependent on the resources of the local public library<sup>19</sup>.

There was a surge of activity in the 1980s as a result of initiatives to fund short-term projects which would train unemployed people to gain some marketable skills. The projects funded by the Manpower Services Commission (MSC) enabled a number of libraries to employ workers on short-term contracts to index some of the local newspapers in their collections. An article in *The Indexer* described these Special Community Projects stressing, they,

must be of public benefit, must bring about the acquisition of useful skills by those employed, must not be likely to be performed by any other body within two years nor be the responsibility of a local council,

continuing, 'not an easy slot to fill, but the indexing of local archives and newspapers does meet all these requirements'<sup>20</sup>. Although many projects began enthusiastically, not everyone regarded them with favour. In 1985 another article in *The Indexer* bemoaned the low rates of pay and the low status of indexing,

Indexers as yet have less professional clout. But we must all continue to feel concern at the effects and attitude on the part of government to the hosts of unemployed. - 'Let them compile indexes'<sup>21</sup>.

Jane Secker discusses the *Carmarthen Journal Index 1809-1899* which indexes travel, communications, births, deaths, marriages, property for sale and crime for the years 1810-c.1856 which was compiled by MSC volunteers on a card index<sup>22</sup>. A number of other projects were discussed in *The Indexer* and in the *Local Studies Librarian*. The ending of funding for projects of this kind meant that newspaper indexing suffered and the momentum was lost. So great was the interest in newspaper indexing that BLNL organised a seminar on the subject at Bristol in November 1986 and another at York in April 1987<sup>23</sup>.

Well over a thousand provincial newspapers from the whole United Kingdom are indexed in some form or another and many of these indexes are listed in the *Bibliography of British newspapers* or in individual NEWSPLAN reports. Thus we learn that the *Waterloo and Crosby Herald*, and *Formby and Seaforth Gazette* are indexed between 1974 and May 1987 at Bootle and Southport Public Libraries and from 1895 onwards at Crosby Library<sup>24</sup>.

As discussed in Chapter 2, a number of library authorities have issued guides to their newspaper collections; e.g. Nottinghamshire, Derbyshire and Oxfordshire, and many of these indicate whether or not indexes to particular newspapers exist. These lists may also cite existing published indexes and discuss how selective their coverage is. Oxfordshire divides them into published and unpublished, and includes Eileen Davies, *A chronological synopsis and index to Jackson's Oxford Journal, 1753-1790*<sup>25</sup> as well as the unpublished W. Paterson Ellis, *Extracts mainly from Jackson's Oxford Journal illustrating Oxford history, 1753 -1850*. Information on unpublished indexes can be found on the entries for individual libraries on the *Familia* web site<sup>26</sup> but by no means all libraries have contributed to it. The future existence of this web site seems more secure now that a number of libraries have paid subscriptions to ensure it continues.

In Leicestershire a number of volunteer projects have been responsible for indexing a selection of retrospective newspapers. One adult education class worked on indexing births, marriages and deaths in the *Leicester Chronicle* and the *Leicester Journal* and the work of another class was published as a booklet<sup>27</sup>. Currently the main daily, the *Leicester Mercury*, is indexed by the Leicestershire Record Office but births, marriages and deaths and small ads are not. In line with other newspapers published by the Newsquest Media Group, an online version of the paper is produced, with automatic indexing, but there is no archive. There is no attempt to index retrospectively. For some years

a group of elderly volunteers regularly indexed newspapers in Leicester Central Library but now only one person is still working on the index.

Although it is not generally available, BLNL generously made its database of indexing activity available to DD. It revealed that 572 newspapers were indexed in England with 334 ongoing indexes. Fifty four titles were indexed more than once. One of the things that emerged was the great diversity both in the quality of the indexes and their degree of comprehensiveness. Antiquarians and bibliographers have compiled indexes over the years, including a nineteenth-century manuscript index to the *Hereford Journal*, 1770-1831 in Hereford Library. There are numerous examples of published indexes: for example, the Meadley index to the *Hull Times* or the indexes to the *Durham County Advertiser*<sup>28</sup>. However, the quality of many of the indexes ranged from the excellent to the incompetent and misleading. Baird was of the view that although the BLNL assumed responsibility for monitoring and recording local newspaper indexing activity,

it has not yet prevented the 'failure of efficiency',  
by which new projects throughout the country repeat  
the same mistakes in working practices and indexing  
techniques<sup>29</sup>.

Geraldine Beare blamed the number of non-library bodies that undertook indexing projects under the auspices of the MSC and was dismissive about the quality of much of the indexing<sup>30</sup>.

As the last survey of newspaper indexing took place in 1987, it was decided that it would be useful to update this information to ascertain how much newspaper indexing is taking place in England. Because the main medium of communication for local studies issues is the *Local Studies Librarian*, an initial request for information on current and retrospective newspaper indexing was inserted in the first issue for 2001. Twenty librarians from authorities as different as Plymouth and Oxford responded with detailed lists of their activities. As there are full and up to date details on indexes in libraries in Yorkshire and Humberside available on the Yorkshire and Humberside NEWSPLAN website<sup>31</sup>, it was not necessary to contact local studies librarians in this region. Likewise, local studies librarians in the East Midlands and members of the committee of the Library Association Local Studies Group readily responded to a verbal request for information. For the remaining authorities from whom no information was received, a letter was sent in 2002 asking them to supplement and update the information that already existed. The first letter yielded a poor response and all libraries that had not responded were contacted by e-mail in April 2003, using an up to date list of e-mail addresses of local studies libraries which had been collected by the Local Studies Group. Using this proved highly productive with responses being received from over 80 % of those contacted.

The responses reveal the complexity and variety of newspaper indexing in England. Very few libraries maintain separate indexes to individual

newspapers and most tend to maintain composite local indexes to a locality based on scanning a number of local newspapers and magazines. Thus staff in Durham scan the *Northern Echo*, *Durham Advertiser*, *Sunderland Echo* and *Newcastle Evening Chronicle* for information relating to Durham City area which they index. A similar approach is adopted in Leicestershire Record Office where a wide range of county newspapers is used as the source material for a Leicestershire local index.

Many libraries maintain files of press cuttings, using these in place of newspaper indexes as such. Cuttings files, or clippings files, as they are known in the United States, are commonly found in newspaper offices as well as local studies collections. Ian Maxted made the point that cuttings files may consist of information from a variety of sources including ephemera and manuscripts. Sometimes collections complement one another<sup>32</sup>. That from the 1950s and 1960s in the Devon and Exeter Institution covers areas where the West Country Studies Library in Exeter is weak. Exeter Central Library arranges them by parish with subject subdivisions but Plymouth maintains a detailed classification arrangement to its cuttings. Geoff Smith pointed out,

Where subject access is the primary requirement of a collection, the traditional alternative to collecting runs of newspapers has been the creation of news cuttings in libraries. This has been the approach adopted commonly in their libraries. It involves the physical cutting out of newspapers in which they appeared and their filing by subject heading or subject classification. It differs from indexing because each clipping is an entity in its own right but a well constructed cuttings classification requires the same intellectual input as an index<sup>33</sup>.

The librarian at Wolverhampton Archives and Local Studies stated that they have taken newspaper cuttings from the late 1950s from the *Express and Star*, the *Wolverhampton Chronicle* and the *Wolverhampton Adnews* (from 1986) for which there is a subject index up to 1997. From 1997 the articles have been scanned into an in-house local studies catalogue maintained by Wolverhampton Library. This is an excellent example of mutual cooperation between the newspaper publishers and the local library. It offers possibilities for automatic indexing of current newspapers from which many libraries could benefit.

One of the more innovative projects concerning press cuttings has taken place in Norwich to digitise cuttings from the holdings of Eastern Counties Newspapers from 1922-1994 replacing the collection of press cuttings destroyed by fire in 1994<sup>34</sup>. This enables the 16,500 cuttings from two Norwich papers, the *Eastern Daily Press* and the *Evening News*, to be accessible to the public in the new Millennium Library in Norwich. The project involves a full time scanner and a full time indexing team of two qualified librarians using a subject authority file created when the library was recatalogued after the 1994 fire. Manual indexing, using MARC, was necessary after OCR had to be abandoned as it was too expensive and required too much training.

Even where indexes exist, many librarians are reticent about their existence and do not publicise information about indexes. Some

volunteered reasons why they did not, 'We do not publicise details about the availability of the indexes as they are largely held in wooden cabinets in our store and as such are not available for public use'<sup>35</sup>, or, 'Not really, they aren't that wonderful'<sup>36</sup>. On the other hand, libraries in the Yorkshire and Humberside area have published information on their indexes on the NEWSPLAN web site<sup>37</sup>.

The section on unpublished indexes on the *Familia* web site enables libraries to record information on newspaper indexes and many have done so, such as Oldham. However, in an e-mail, a librarian in East Sussex stated that misleading information on Sussex indexes can be found on the *Familia* web site. This was also true when DD informed libraries of what indexes were listed for them in the BLNL survey. Some expressed surprise and wondered where the information came from.

Libraries that are advanced with their web sites are keen to promote their newspaper indexes. Bexley Libraries is an excellent example of a library service that allows online searching of the indexes of its local newspapers<sup>38</sup>. Similarly Plymouth has been indexing newspapers electronically, allowing users to search the web site<sup>39</sup> and Hampshire indicated in an e-mail that they were hoping to place their recent indexes to local Hampshire newspapers on the web late in 2002 and to index current material directly on to the web. Nick Fox described the plans in a paper given to the 4<sup>th</sup> NEWSPLAN Conference in London in



2002<sup>40</sup>. A name index to the *Hastings and St Leonard's Chronicle* is available online for use by staff in East Sussex County Council but not to the general public.

Very few libraries now use volunteers although in the past the practice was widespread, as for example in East Sussex. A rare example of recent indexing activity was a project to index the *Acton Gazette* 1870-1965 and to compile indexes to various Acton newspapers in the 1860s which was carried out by volunteers and completed in 2001.

Indexing may not take place because of insufficient resources or staff time and some librarians expressed their regret about this. 'How I wish we did' declared a librarian in Rochdale but in Camden, there were no regrets about not indexing as it would be a drain on time and resources.

## **Points to be considered when indexing**

### ***Users***

Dr Herbert Rice pointed out the value of newspaper indexes,

It helps those who wish to settle an argument concerning some person, event, or other fact in the early history of ... any...place. It is manna from heaven for genealogists since the newspaper is a permanent record of births, marriages, occupations, activities and deaths of countless people. To writers of state and local history, the newspaper supplies facts and background material not available elsewhere. The index is useful to newspapermen who wish to check on past events or precedents. It is helpful to teachers who are planning historical projects for their classrooms and to students working on essays or term papers in local or regional history<sup>41</sup>.

The bibliographer, Fredson Bowers, urged Canadians to turn their attention to the importance of newspaper indexing for literary research in a paper to the Canadian Bibliographical Society in 1971,

Canadian literary study will be the poorer if your newspapers are not systematically searched and indexed for poems, essays, articles, stories and reviews by Canadian authors. Time is running out. These newspapers are disintegrating and they have immensely valuable material locked up in them, unknown untouched<sup>42</sup>.

Knowledge of the needs of British users has been greatly enhanced in the last two or three years by surveys of those consulting newspapers in public libraries<sup>43</sup>. This is discussed in Chapter 1.

Greater familiarity with the needs of users and the way in which they use newspapers will enable indexers to tailor their indexes more closely to meet these needs. In her research into the use of newspapers by Welsh historians Jane Secker found that 85% used newspapers and local weeklies were the most widely used. She discussed newspaper indexes with a number of Welsh historians and the consensus was that although locally constructed indexes were available their quality was varied and information about their existence was often unreliable or lacking<sup>44</sup>. A recent regional survey asked respondents if they thought indexes would help them in finding information. With the exception of those in Yorkshire and Humberside, over 50% thought they would. The results may depend on whether or not the respondents had access to an index for the newspapers they were using. In the East Midlands region users displayed great

enthusiasm, perhaps because they were more familiar with using them.

Table 1 summarises the findings from the user surveys conducted in 2001<sup>45</sup> which revealed that users generally thought that indexes would be of assistance in finding information from newspapers.

**TABLE 1**

**Whether indexes would assist in finding information**

**% in favour**

SW	N	Y&H	EM	LASER	NW
55	52	37.8	70	55.8	55.3

SW – South West; N – Northern; Y&H Yorkshire and Humberside; LASER –London and South East; NW – North West

### ***Which newspapers to index?***

Because of the large number of provincial newspapers that have been published in England over the years, hard decisions will need to be made about which titles should be indexed. In an ideal world all titles would be indexed and their contents made readily and easily available. Rice pointed out that users ought to be able to extract information from an unindexed title by using the index to another newspaper,

A newspaper index gains additional value from the fact that an index for one newspaper often serves to guide the individual to the approximate date when the topic was likely to have been handled by other newspapers<sup>46</sup>.

However, what is indexed is determined by available resources, both of budget, staffing and time. Decisions will have to be made about which title most accurately reflects the news in a particular place over a period of time. This may not always be the title that is circulating currently.

Decisions may be influenced by what indexing has already been done.

The surveys revealed a number of indexes that only covered a few years of a long running title. For instance, an assessment will have to be made to ensure that the existing index is of high enough quality and it may be advisable to start all over again in some cases. On the other hand, it may be possible simply to fill in the missing years to supplement an existing index.

As discussed in Chapter 4, it is not possible to dismiss free newspapers as having little information value and therefore unworthy of indexing. In many communities, the free newspaper is the only title available and often, as in the case of the *Oadby and Wigston News*, it is an invaluable source of information in the community.

### ***What should be indexed?***

In a survey of eight projects indexing small circulation daily newspapers in the United States Sandlin and Schlessinger noted the,

lack of agreement exhibited on what should or should not be indexed. Since indexing is based on the needs of the audience, one might expect that, for the audience of small daily newspapers there would be agreement in this area<sup>147</sup>.

The authors suggested that the lack of conformity in their findings could be due either to variations in the audiences or alternatively the subjectivity of the indexing process.

The main consideration has to be the needs of the user, both present and future. In most cases a pragmatic approach will have to be adopted as few authorities will have unlimited resources and full text retrieval with keyword searching is a unrealistic aspiration at present for all English provincial newspaper titles. It should be remembered that what not to index is almost as important as the decision what to index.

It is important to decide whether the index should be confined to purely local information or whether it should also cover national news.

Elizabeth Watthews, speaking at the 1987 seminar on newspaper indexing in York, deplored a decision to exclude foreign and national news and news from outside the immediate locality from the journal to the *Ipswich Journal*<sup>48</sup>. This meant that an earthquake in neighbouring Colchester was excluded because it was not in Suffolk, however because of its proximity to Ipswich, it affected the town and its surrounding area.

It is essential to clarify exactly what dates should be indexed. Because many eighteenth century newspapers carried little local news but contained information gleaned from London and foreign newspapers,

they were sometimes deemed to be of little importance as a source of local information. The indexers to the *Ipswich Journal* were of this opinion and decided to concentrate on the nineteenth century and ignore the eighteenth century, because in their view the nineteenth century was more interesting. Later librarians have found to their cost that this decision deprived them of access to important local information, especially in the form of advertisements.

In an ideal world, everything would be indexed. The growth of interest in advertisements as a historical source demonstrates the folly of not indexing them. Increasingly historians are turning their attention to local newspapers and advertisements are now recognised as a vital source of historical information.<sup>49</sup> The programme for the 20th seminar on book trade history in Exeter on 23rd-25th July 2002 included two papers on newspaper advertising in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. However, their use is much broader than simply for historical purposes. They may be used for legal or consumer claims and a survey revealed that in Croydon 13% of all use of local newspapers related to non-property advertisements. Geraldine Beare cites the example of how property advertisements provided illustrations on the builder of the Tarrant Houses of Weybridge<sup>50</sup>. Newspaper advertisements can also be used to plot house prices and may be used as evidence in property tax disputes.

Newspapers carry features, recipes and news of sporting fixtures as well as advertising and news. Is the sports news available elsewhere or

should it be indexed as the only record? Small football clubs such as Woking may find themselves in the news if they have a particularly successful match against a large club in a football league competition. Their previous performances become newsworthy and the information suddenly needs to be accessible. People who later become celebrities may cut their teeth on a column in the local paper and a decision not to index such material may cause problems for later biographers. The same may be true of fiction: from the 1880s it was common for local newspapers to carry syndicated fiction.

One of the problems is deciding at what point you do not index material in the local paper. For instance, indexing all planning applications is a case in point. Obviously, major applications that would change the character of an area are worthy of inclusion, such as a bypass, new housing estate or superstore. Porches and additional rooms on private dwellings can probably be omitted. Nonetheless, a spate of home extensions may have demographic consequences and lead to a higher density of population and therefore be of importance in the future.

The Huntingdonshire Local History Society used volunteers to produce a subject index to the *Hunts Post*<sup>51</sup> and took the advice of a professional librarian. They decided to exclude syndicated material and sport, unless it had special local relevance such as fen skating. They also excluded advertisements unless they were tenders for local public works, notices concerning local charities or the sale of substantial local properties.

### ***Which edition to index?***

This is generally a problem as it is not possible to index all editions of a provincial daily. For instance, the *Leicester Mercury* has ten separate editions daily. The generally accepted practice is to index the final edition of the day. This can mean that if a major news item breaks, earlier material will be left out and may never be recorded. Similarly, many provincial papers have local editions which may only consist of a few variant pages and it is important that all the variant material is indexed.

### **Guidelines and authority lists**

Ideally, a statement should appear at the start of the index indicating the inclusion/exclusion policy. Few indexes are very clear on this. Library authorities should consider drawing up guidelines for indexing newspapers. Many such as Derbyshire and Lancashire have already done so. The thesaurus of indexing terms for Lancashire is intended for use in all their branch libraries. This means that a degree of continuity and consistency can be maintained and it ensures that teams of volunteers receive clear guidance on what to do.

It is extremely helpful to have an authority file of subject headings. It can be based on the subject headings used in the local collection in which the newspapers are housed. It may be adapted from subject headings drawn up by another library. Ian Maxted's thesaurus for local studies in Devon was specifically constructed for use in Devon but its subject



headings' terminology is suitable for much wider application<sup>52</sup>. Other libraries could use it in conjunction with a list of local place names. An authority file may be based on an existing newspaper index, even if this has now ceased. Local bibliographies may have developed their own thesauri, such as the now defunct *East Midlands Bibliography*<sup>53</sup>, and the subject headings may be applicable for indexing newspapers in the area concerned.

It may be possible to use an existing index as a model. Writing about the official index to the *Washington Post*, Milstead stated, there

is no other kind of material for which it has been seriously stated for years that the index of one publication could serve, even if inadequately, as an index for all other publications of that genre<sup>54</sup>.

Geraldine Beare advocates using the *Times Index*<sup>55</sup>. A note of caution should be given that only recent versions are acceptable, as she pointed out, *Palmer's Index to the Times* contained numerous idiosyncrasies, that would be inappropriate for modern use. For example, an entry on a body found in the Thames was indexed under 'Found – drowned in the Thames'<sup>56</sup>.

The *Glasgow Herald* produced clear guidelines for its indexers, each of whom was provided with a copy of the *Glasgow Herald* list of subject headings which was based on a previous list in use until 1968 and the *Times* list of subject headings. The project manager of the *Scotsman*

index compiled an outline guide to indexing methods and used a list of around 800 prime subject headings<sup>57</sup>. In the United States Michael Knee chose *Sears list of subject headings* 11th edition as his authority file and added other subject headings as appropriate<sup>58</sup>. These were pencilled in to Sears and used alongside names of local people, places and events.

A number of recent initiatives have come from newspapers themselves. Sometimes guidance manuals were produced as part of MSC funded projects, as for instance for the *Aberdeen Free Press*, the *Scotsman*, and the *Glasgow Herald*. That for the *Aberdeen Free Press* contained an outline of what to index, a thesaurus of personal names along with instructions on how to assign subject headings, together with appendices including lists of preferred terms and an large authority file of main headings<sup>59</sup>. The one for the *Glasgow Herald* project was,

deliberately written in the style of, say, a car maintenance manual which has sections on "How to get started on a cold morning" or "What to do about a flat tyre"<sup>60</sup>.

In California, the Napa County local history indexing project indexer's manual contains a complete authority file for personal names and subjects and is intended both for library staff and volunteers indexing current and historical literature. Manuals like this are intended to ensure consistency and to cater for indexers with varying degrees of competence and experience. Writing in 1942 Harry A Friedman , warned that,

[a]n index made in a haphazard fashion without a plan  
will be doomed to take its place among other  
bibliographic wrecks before it is well under way,

and that 'the rules cannot be made while the index is being made'<sup>61</sup>.

## Terminology

Whatmore discussed two different approaches used by news libraries which have some relevance to potential indexers. Following the tradition of Charles Cutter, indexers can 'file everything under the narrowest heading that will contain it and then place it straight out'. This is suitable for a thesaurus of descriptors for databases but will otherwise require many 'see' and 'see also' references. It does have the disadvantage that a large number of headings will be generated and this allows 'complex ranks of subdivision to proliferate' with the disadvantage that it is difficult to place new topics in their logical place<sup>62</sup>. The Derbyshire guidelines suggest that an entry should be assigned as many index terms as are helpful<sup>63</sup>. This means that indexers have the choice of using narrow terms with a lot of 'see' references or broader terms with subdivisions.

The example of foxhunting demonstrates the problem. The *Times Index* uses,

Foxes, see Field sports - hunting  
Animals, cruelty to  
Foxhunting

An alternative could be Foxhunting  
See Blood sports; hunting;

Beare advises limiting to not more than three levels. Whatmore advises indexers to,

choose one specific heading as the main place and stick to it (the decision dependent on whether and how it will be required in the future and on what has gone before it) and that the indexer must have a very good reason for any subsidiary place that s/he chooses<sup>64</sup>.

When indexing newspapers, the sub-title often reveals whether or not material is going to be helpful. The indexer needs to ensure a balance between precise terminology and the need for a manageable vocabulary.

Much of the material in local newspapers relates to personal names and many users are searching for information about people. Where several people have the same name it is important to identify dates and also distinguishing occupational or other characteristics. Similarly, organisations change their names and it will be important to provide cross references to ensure material can be retrieved in the future.

However, an indexer can only index the name in front of him/her. Firms may be listed under place; eg. *Beccles – printers - Clowes* as well as under *Clowes* which will enable those with an interest in printing in Beccles not to miss items on its most important printing house.

Decisions have to be made on whether organisations such as John Player Ltd. go under Player, John or under its trading name. There are, of course, helpful standards for names in AACR2<sup>65</sup> and these should be

consulted. In multicultural Britain a greater diversity of names is represented in modern provincial newspapers and it is important that these are correctly cited according to established conventions of nomenclature.

Koch drew attention to a problem facing newspaper indexers which is that newspapers are notorious for printing inaccurate information. She cites research revealing that 'about half of all straight news stories contain some kind of error'<sup>66</sup>. Her advice to indexers is to index the information as it appears and to index corrections as they appear with references back to the original article.

### **Manual versus automated?**

Newspaper indexing is an obvious candidate for automation. There are many commercial packages for indexing, such as MACREX and CINDEX which are well suited to newspaper indexing and are readily and cheaply available. The literature is full of accounts of people using word processing packages such as Wordstar and Word as well as relational databases such as Pro-Cite, Tinman, dbase 1V, & FilemakerPro all of which can be readily adapted to newspaper indexing<sup>67</sup>. Often these articles also describe the way in which the intellectual work of preparing to index was organised, as well as the mechanics of using software that is now out of date. As such they are still helpful to novice indexers. Increasingly users of automated packages compare their experiences on the Internet.

It is perfectly possible to use packages which require information to be input on templates that can be used to create a database. A number of smaller libraries have relied on basic word processing packages to index their newspaper files. Katharine Shakespeare<sup>68</sup> used Filemaker Pro to create a sample index to the *Leicester Mercury*. The outcome was well received by the *Mercury's* librarian, Steve England, but the company was about to join the Newsquest Media Group so the package was never used as the paper was going to be produced online. If it is relatively easy to create a suitable database, it is far less easy to assign indexing terms and this is the main intellectual work of indexing.

In the 1980s card indexes were still the favoured option. Then the bands of dedicated volunteers, many of whom were senior citizens, would have been challenged by computers and were at that stage happier writing records on cards. However, nowadays many senior citizens are computer literate and the software in use today is considerably more user friendly than it used to be. It is erroneous to assume that a hard copy index would be cheaper. For the average local weekly newspaper it is calculated that some 400 cards would be needed each week and this is not cheap.

In 1987 Elizabeth Watthews commented,

Now, if we'd started five years later, when I knew a lot more about computers, we might have looked a lot harder at the possibility of using a micro. In the last quarter of the twentieth century the laborious work of details on catalogue cards seems ludicrous. However, the volunteers who come forward, a noble army of women, have no experience of computers<sup>69</sup>.

It is probably true to say that now there would be less hesitation in using a computer to maintain the index. Nonetheless, 75% of indexes are still produced on cards. However, increasingly libraries are closing their card indexes and indexing information into online catalogues. Since 2000 Plymouth Libraries have included new entries to the index on their web catalogue and no longer index on cards. It is interesting to note that *The Guardian index, 1929-1972* was reproduced on microfiche rather than being scanned digitally on the grounds that 'conversion to an electronic database would be prohibitively expensive'<sup>70</sup>.

### **The future**

Clearly there are advantages in digitising files of newspapers with automatic indexing. At a recent conference in London in April 2002 there were a number of presentations demonstrating the flexibility of keyword searching in digitised newspapers. Many of the results were extremely impressive, especially from Olive software and the Helsinki University Library<sup>71</sup>. Such activity is better suited to small files or press cuttings at present because of the costs involved. In an ideal future all local newspapers past and present would be digitised and cheaply available to all with facilities for keyword browsing of the entire run of every title. For the present, this is still unrealistic. It cannot be emphasised enough that good local indexes advance the cause of local history and are an invaluable information source. 'Most librarians realise

that newspaper indexing is a great financial drain but consider it an important service for posterity' wrote Mills<sup>72</sup>.

Many respondents to the recent survey on newspaper indexing in England recognised the value of indexes even if time and resources prevented them from indexing their local newspapers.

---

<sup>1</sup> S Miekowska (2000) Investigating digital collections: some perspectives. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* 29 (1), 8.

<sup>2</sup> S Green (1984) The British Library Newspaper Library in a new era. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 1 (1), 4.

<sup>3</sup> H Rice (1972) To whom is the newspaper index useful? *Milwaukee Sentinel* April 24.

<sup>4</sup> A C Milner (1977) *Newspaper indexes: a location and subject guide for researchers*. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow.

<sup>5</sup> R Bowker (1893) Index to newspapers. *Library Journal* 18,50.

<sup>6</sup> H A Friedman (1942) *Newspaper indexing*. Milwaukee, WI: Marquette Press.

<sup>7</sup> J E Koch (1985) Newspaper indexing: planning and options. *Special Libraries* 74(4), 274.

<sup>8</sup> E Perica (1975) *Newspaper indexing for historical societies, colleges and high schools*. New York: Research Libraries Group.

<sup>9</sup> J M Einhorn (1976) *Guidelines for indexing local newspapers*. Westerly, RI: Westerly Public Library.

<sup>10</sup> Koch (1985), 274.

<sup>11</sup> D R Smith (1978) *Newspaper indexing handbook for small libraries*. Arlington, VA: Educational Resources Information Center

<sup>12</sup> B Semonche (1993) 'Newspaper indexing policies and procedures', in *News media libraries: a management handbook*. Westport, CT: Greenwood. It is available at <http://ibiblio.org/journalism/indexing>

<sup>13</sup> (1992) 'Indexes', in *Chicago Manual of Style*. 14<sup>th</sup> edn. Chicago, IL: Chicago University Press.

<sup>14</sup> American Society of Indexers <http://we.com/user/asi> and Australian Society of Indexers <http://aussi.org>

<sup>15</sup> (1894) *Curtice's index to 'The Times', the London morning and evening papers, one hundred and twenty weeklies and thirty one provincial newspapers... Indexed day by day*. London: Curtice.

<sup>16</sup> (1868-1941) *Palmer's index to the Times newspaper. October 1790-30 June 1941*. Hampton Wick: S Palmer.

<sup>17</sup> (1991-) *Independent*; (1995-) *Guardian and Observer*; (1990) *Financial Times* and (1997-) *Daily Telegraph*. Major British newspapers are also indexed on the CD ROM (1991) *British newspaper index*. Reading: Research Publications

<sup>18</sup> (1897) *The Folkestone Chronicle index of the principal events from 1855-1866*. Folkestone: Folkestone Chronicle.

<sup>19</sup> F Tait (1990) 'News and current information', in P Lea and A Day *Printed reference material*. 3rd edn. London: Library Association Publishing, 136-58.

<sup>20</sup> (1984) Manpower Services Commission indexing. *The Indexer* 14 (1), 29.

<sup>21</sup> (1985) The Manpower Services Commission: professional response. *The Indexer* 14 (3), 193.

<sup>22</sup> J Secker (1999) 'Newspapers and historical research: a study of historians and custodians in Wales'. University of Wales Aberystwyth: PhD thesis.



<sup>23</sup> Summaries of the papers were given in an issue of (1987) *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 5-13.

<sup>24</sup> R Cowley (1990) *Report of the NEWSPLAN project in the North Western region*. London: British Library, 76.

<sup>25</sup> E C Davies (1976) *A chronological synopsis to Jackson's Oxford Journal, relating to the county, city and university of Oxford*. Oxford: Bodleian Law Library.

<sup>26</sup> Familia lists resources for family history from contributing libraries at <http://familia.org/services>

<sup>27</sup> R L Greenall, (1980) *The Leicester newspapers 1850-1874: a guide for historians*. . Leicester: Leicester University Department of Adult Education.

<sup>28</sup> R Barnard (1998) *The Meadley index to the Hull Times*. 2 vols. Hull: Hull College Local History Unit with Hull City Council and (1969) *Index to the Durham County Advertiser September 1814 to December 1825*. Durham: Durham County Library. (1978) *Index to the Durham County Advertiser January 1826 to December 1835*. Durham: Durham County Library.

<sup>29</sup> P Baird (1987) The *Glasgow Herald* index project. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 3 & 15-16.

<sup>30</sup> G Beare (1987) Indexing: the users point of view. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 8.

<sup>31</sup> History through local newspapers in Yorkshire and the Humber region. Indexes to local newspapers. <http://yli.org.newsplan/yhindex>

<sup>32</sup> <http://devon.gov.uk/locstudy/newspapers>

<sup>33</sup> G Smith (2002) 'Why preserve and what to preserve?', in J Budd, ed. *Managing the preservation of periodicals and newspaper. Proceedings of the IFLA symposium*. München: K G Saur, 34-43.

<sup>34</sup> K Prior (2001) Digitising the Eastern Counties Newspapers for the Norfolk and Norwich Millennium Library. *Newspaper Library News* (30), 16-17 and H Hammond (1998) 'Norfolk's potential newspaper database: a cautionary tale'. Presented to the 3<sup>rd</sup> NEWSPLAN conference, Durham <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan>

<sup>35</sup> E-mail from Sarah Harding at Newham Libraries, 30 April 2003.

<sup>36</sup> E-mail from Milton Keynes Libraries, 29 April 2003.

<sup>37</sup> <http://yli.org.newsplan/yhindex>

<sup>38</sup> Bexley's local newspaper index enables users to search by subject and keyword from 1965 onwards. <http://bexley.gov.uk/service/library/e-library>

<sup>39</sup> <http://webopac.plymouth.gov.uk/cgi-bin/plymouth-cat.sh?engtype>

<sup>40</sup> N Fox (2002) 'Newspaper developments: future opportunities for public libraries'. Presented to the 4th NEWSPLAN conference, London April 9, 70-78.

<http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan>

<sup>41</sup> Rice (1972), vii. See note 3.

<sup>42</sup> F Bowers (1971) Four faces of bibliography. *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada* 10, 33-45.

<sup>43</sup> <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/regsurvey>

<sup>44</sup> J Secker (1999) See note 22.

<sup>45</sup> The results of the survey are available at <http://bl.uk.concord/linc/regsurvey>

<sup>46</sup> Rice (1972) vii. See note 3.

<sup>47</sup> L M Sandlin, J H Schlessinger and B S Schlessinger (1985) Indexing of smaller circulation daily newspapers. *The Indexer* 14 (3), 186.

<sup>48</sup> <http://bl.uk.concord/linc/regsurvey>

<sup>49</sup> D Dixon (1998) Con man or honest broker: advertising in local newspapers. *Local Studies Librarian* 19(1), 12-16 gives a brief overview of the nature and diversity of advertising in local newspapers.

<sup>50</sup> G Beare (1999) *Indexing newspapers, magazines and other periodicals*. Sheffield: Society of Indexers.

<sup>51</sup> (1982) Indexing the *Hunts Post*. *Records of Huntingdonshire* 2, 10-11.

<sup>52</sup> This unpublished thesaurus is intended for use in Devon libraries.

<sup>53</sup> The *East Midlands Bibliography* relied on a complicated place and subject classification.

<sup>54</sup> J L Milstead (1983) 'Newspaper indexing: the official *Washington Post* index', in H E Feinberg, ed. *Indexing: specialized formats and subjects*. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow, 189-204.

- 
- <sup>55</sup> Beare (1999), 21. See note 50.
- <sup>56</sup> G Whatmore (1973) Classification for news libraries. *Aslib Proceedings* 25(6), 208.
- <sup>57</sup> J Bennett (1987) The Scotsman index project. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 11-12.
- <sup>58</sup> M Knee (1982) Producing a local newspaper index. *The Indexer* 13(2), 101.
- <sup>59</sup> G Beare (1989) Local newspaper indexing projects and products. *The Indexer* 16 (4), 232.
- <sup>60</sup> F McAdams, P Baird and F Gibb (1985) Indexing the *Glasgow Herald*. *Catalogue and Index* 78/79, 8.
- <sup>61</sup> Friedman (1942), 1. See note 6.
- <sup>62</sup> G Whatmore (1973), 208.
- <sup>63</sup> Local newspapers index: instructions for indexers. Matlock: Derbyshire Libraries. Unpublished.
- <sup>64</sup> Whatmore (1973) 209.
- <sup>65</sup> Detailed guidance for the ordering of names is given in (1988) Anglo American Cataloguing Rules. 2nd edn. London: Library Association. Headings for persons. Special rules for names in certain languages, 572-82.
- <sup>66</sup> J E Koch (1985), 274. See note 7.
- <sup>67</sup> Examples include: A Walker (1986) Creating a newspaper index: microcomputers to the rescue. *Wilson Library Bulletin* 61, 26-9; C Wall (1987) Newspaper indexing using an IBM mainframe computer and text formatting program. *Information Technology and Libraries* 6 (1) 24-39; S. Torrington (1987) Computers and local newspaper indexing: experience of the publisher/ indexer. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 12-13; M Noordof (1991) Indexing with Authex. *Computers in Libraries* 11 (1), 25-26; M D Cramer and M J Markland (1989) Newspaper indexing with Pro-cite. *College and Research Libraries* 50 (9), 807-8.
- <sup>68</sup> K Shakespeare (1993) 'The indexing of local newspapers and the development of a computer index on Filemaker Pro'. Loughborough University of Technology: MA thesis.
- <sup>69</sup> E Watthews (1987) The Ipswich Journal index. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 6-7.
- <sup>70</sup> Undated Flyer The *Guardian* index. Marlborough: Adam Matthew Publications.
- <sup>71</sup> The papers are available at <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan>. D Dixon (2002) NEWSPLAN. *Library and Information Update* 1 (3), 305 gives a short summary of the conference.
- <sup>72</sup> T Mills (1981) Preserving yesterday's news for today's historian. *Journal of Library History* 16 (3), 475.

## CHAPTER SIX

### SURROGACY AND PRESERVATION

One of the most important resources of the local studies library is the file of local and regional newspapers, frequently dating from the late eighteenth century, which often provide the only contemporary reference to an event or personality of historical interest. The heavy use made of the original hard copy files, coupled with the inbuilt deterioration of newspapers manufactured from mechanical wood-pulp has long led a number of public libraries to microfilm, often as a joint venture, with the newspaper concerned, and occasionally neighbouring authorities, with appropriate sharing of costs<sup>1</sup>.

This chapter examines the physical format of newspapers and considers why the long term survival of originals presents problems. Issues of storage, surrogacy and preservation are discussed. New initiatives, including digitisation of newspapers are considered both in the UK and overseas.

Newspapers differ from many other forms of information in that they are intended to be discarded after being read. They are produced as cheaply as possible for mass consumption and many publishers have no interest in them as archival artefacts. With the exception of the royal edition of the *Times*, normally newspapers are produced as economically as possible. In the early eighteenth century newspapers were tabloid in format and generally consisted of four pages. By the 1770s many, such as the *Leeds Mercury* or the *Cumberland Pacquet*, were broadsheets and with a few exceptions this was the preferred format throughout the nineteenth century. Paper shortages in World War

1 caused many titles to adopt a tabloid format and this is the preferred format nowadays for many provincial newspapers, such as the *Henley Standard* or the *Lowestoft Journal*.

### **Paper quality**

Although the problem of acid-destruction of paper has been recognised for over a century, it was only in the second half of the twentieth century that the scale of the problem became a matter for concern. By the late 1970s it was an inescapable fact that files of newspapers were crumbling away before our eyes. Newspapers printed between 1860 and 1920 were particularly vulnerable, not only because of poor storage conditions, but also threatened by the enemy within - the chemical composition of the paper on which they were printed. DD experienced this in Newcastle City Library in 1971 on being presented with a rare Gateshead newspaper which fell out of its brown paper parcel in crumbs. Depressing stories about the deterioration of newspapers abound. Ruth Cowley drew up a list of the problems most frequently encountered: blackened and therefore illegible pages; tears, creases; crumbling paper especially at the edges; cut pages; repairs with sellotape; torn pages; dirty, damp and discoloured pages; edges of consecutive pages cracked and therefore interleaved - careless turning causes them all to tear further<sup>2</sup>.

Until the middle of the nineteenth century newspapers were printed on paper made from cotton rag fibre which was strong and durable, with the result that newspapers from the eighteenth century are normally in good

condition. It is estimated that good quality rag paper will have an infinite longevity provided it is not used and kept under suitable environmental conditions. Newspaper production was, however, relatively expensive and with the greatly increased demand for mass circulation weekly and daily newspapers after 1855, cheaper alternatives needed to be used.

With the introduction of paper made from wood fibres pulped by steam processing the situation changed. Fibres were shorter and wood pulp contains lignin, a highly unstable component of the wood, which attracts acid from the environment. Other substances were added, such as bleaching powder to counteract discoloration, and sizes in order to decrease porosity. Reactive agents, ie.lignin, within paper made in this way contribute to its destruction, and excessive moisture and heat accelerate chemical decay.

At the 1987 conference on 'Newspaper Preservation and Access', Gerhard Banik from the Austrian National Library discussed in some detail the chemical processes leading to the destruction of paper by acid<sup>3</sup>. He pointed out that paper sized with aluminium sulphate rosin was particularly vulnerable to poor storage conditions, especially high humidity, and that the resulting hydrolysis created sulphuric acid which attacks the cellulose and weakens it. This process is accelerated by pollution, heat, and light causing paper to become yellow and brittle before disintegrating. Use is also detrimental and causes mechanical breakdown. Acid from the fingers of those reading the papers is also detrimental to the stability of the paper in a minor way, but much more



damage will be caused by careless turning of the pages. Jim Lyons drew up some preservation pointers for collectors of newspapers;

HEAT: Even a comfortable room heat of about 72 degrees rapidly ages paper. And the hotter the room the faster the paper ages.

LIGHT: Sunlight is poison for paper. Whatever you do, keep your newspapers out of the sun...Fluorescent lighting is also harmful to paper.

HUMIDITY: Relative humidity of 40% is ideal, 65% is about the top limit<sup>4</sup>.

These comments need to be treated with caution as Lyons should have pointed out that 55% humidity would have been more suitable and that this depends on the temperature. 72 degrees was far too hot. Likewise he should have stressed that all light is harmful and that the effects of excessive light are cumulative. Nonetheless, his comments ensure that collectors are informed about the need to consider heat, light and humidity as endangering their originals.

Since newsprint was not intended to last, woodpulp was attractive to publishers because of its low cost. The disadvantage was that it is an unstable medium and is not appropriate for long term retention.

There are various technologies which allow for the deacidification of paper but it must be remembered that they do not neutralise lignin. Even if newspapers were deacidified they would very soon start to deteriorate again because of the lignin component. The first recorded attempt to stabilise paper deterioration by deacidification was carried out by Sir Arthur Church in 1891 and sophisticated technologies are employed by the preservation departments of national libraries. However, the vast numbers of current and retrospective provincial newspapers in England

alone means that it is not sensible nor economically viable to apply these techniques to newspapers. George Boston aptly summed up the magnitude of the problem,

To try to strive as hard to preserve all the copies of 'Le Figaro' or all the other newspapers published around the world is impossible. The world does not possess the resources in trained manpower to even attempt this task<sup>5</sup>.

It can be added that the accepted view is that we do not have the knowledge at present. The view of the Library of Congress (LC) is,

Conservators have developed a range of treatments and techniques that stabilize and in some cases even strengthen paper made from ground wood pulp, but due to high costs the application of these techniques is normally restricted to very special items<sup>6</sup>.

Even Gerhard Banik, who provided a detailed exposition of preservation procedures for newsprint used in the Austrian National Library, acknowledged,

Although libraries are expected to preserve the original the use of photocopies, microfilm, optical discs and magnetic media should be considered as the final solution to replace unusable items<sup>7</sup>.

For many surrogacy is the preferred alternative as it allows the intellectual content of the newspaper to be preserved in a different but stable format<sup>8</sup>. However as the discussion in Chapter 8 shows this is a highly contentious issue.

## Storage of newspaper files

If copies of older newspapers are to be used, it is essential that they should be filed to facilitate easy retrieval. The *Lincoln Daily News* December 3rd 1884 stated, 'When is a newspaper the sharpest? When it is filed?' Unfortunately poor storage conditions for many newspapers have condemned many newspaper files to rapid deterioration, rendering many of them beyond salvage. Ruth Gordon commented,

There is no doubt that treatment plays a very important role in the preservation of hard copy. Cheap wood-pulp paper may ultimately self-destruct but when it has been well bound before use, in small volumes, and subsequently stored horizontally in small piles, protected from direct light, heat and violent fluctuations of temperature and humidity it can look, after a hundred years, as if it will last another hundred as usable hard copy<sup>9</sup>.

Gordon's assertion that newspapers would last another hundred years is unproven and unduly optimistic. She reported that a few libraries in the East Midlands maintained their newspaper collections in these ideal conditions: Cambridge University Library, Cambridge Central Library and Eastern Counties Newspapers, but these were exceptional in an otherwise gloomy situation. All the NEWSPLAN project officers gave graphic descriptions of the appalling conditions in which many newspapers were stored.

In the North West Ruth Cowley identified the following problems: insecure accommodation, vertical shelving, and inadequate supports for shelving, causing volumes to sag. DD's experience of visiting Leicester



Central Library in the 1970s was equally depressing, as newspapers were shelved too tightly causing the bindings damage when they were removed from the vertical shelves. In Plymouth newspapers were stored in a damp, cold store which showed evidence of vandalism when a visit was made in 1971. In other stores, newspapers were piled in heaps on floors, as in Workington where there was a pile 70 volumes high in the loading bay. Many files showed evidence of water damage as at Millom where, according to David Parry, files of the *Cumberland Pacquet*, *Whitehaven News* and *Whitehaven Advertiser* were in 'an infamous cellar store under the impression it was dry but unfortunately water and rising damp damaged some beyond repair'<sup>10</sup>. They were often subject to insect infestation and mould. This is graphically described by Parry,

On the top floor, in a seldom-visited stone chamber, the walls hung with mouldering moth-eaten stags' heads, several hundred damp volumes of newspapers are slowly rotting, being consumed by mildew and encrusted by black and green mould<sup>11</sup>.

New libraries do not always have ideal conditions, 'the storage conditions in cramped rolling stacks, in which the papers tend to get crushed, are far from ideal'<sup>12</sup> was Parry's verdict on the conditions in Carlisle.

Even when newspapers are bound there is no guarantee that the contents of the volumes will be in pristine condition. Ruth Cowley identified some common problems: issues missing; issues bound in the

wrong order; wrong numbering of issues; other papers bound in the same volume and not mentioned on the binding or elsewhere; where paper size differed sometimes the edges were damaged or creased; text trimmed for binding<sup>13</sup>. Broken and damaged boards and crumbling half leather spines were a frequent result of being mishandled or from mildew and damp, or excessive heat.

A helpful document created by the Library of Congress on preserving newspapers is available on the Internet<sup>14</sup>. It considers that binding is not always beneficial as text can be damaged and the files are often unwieldy. It particularly criticises the practice of shelving files vertically, as this can cause the textblock to separate from the binding. Horizontal storage is recommended. Newspapers that are unbound and likely to be used should be collated carefully before being boxed. For less frequently used material LC recommends wrapping it in sturdy alkaline paper. Lyons in 'Collecting American newspapers'<sup>15</sup> advocates storing newspapers in polythene wrappers and LC acknowledges that this may be a future option once more research has been carried out. Shrink wrappers, which are sometimes recommended should be avoided as these can be very damaging.

There is no doubt that the problems of space continue to cause concern in BLNL. Newspaper files require considerable storage space. Over the years much time in The Consultative Group on Newspapers (CGN) has been spent debating proposals for new accommodation for the

newspapers and their readers. Bound volumes of pre-1986 newspapers are still shelved vertically in BLNL but since 1986 the hard copy originals are wrapped in acid free paper and stored horizontally, after they have been microfilmed. In June 1999 a Preservation Needs Assessment Survey was conducted at BLNL,

The Newspaper Library provided a very interesting exploration of a collection of relatively uniform physical format which is known to present significant conservation and preservation problems<sup>16</sup>.

The findings revealed that 71% of items showed chemical damage to the textblock, and that 15% of bindings exhibited structural damage. The survey pointed out that although chemical damage encompassed mould, in BLNL most of the damage was due to brittleness as a result of acidity.

Adverse storage conditions, together with the inherent acidity of the paper are undoubtedly a major cause of this damage.

Recognising that considerable conservation work would be needed to rectify the situation the survey concluded that 'the creation of microfilm surrogates is, however, a recognised alternative to physical conservation of this kind of material'<sup>17</sup>.

The library remains committed to retaining and storing the hard copy files of British provincial newspapers. Michael Crump reiterated this

determination to maintain its policy of retaining hard copy newspapers at a recent conference on newspapers,

In short, for British newspapers we continue to acquire them in hard copy, and we aim to preserve the originals of all UK newspapers in our care.<sup>18</sup>

The whole question of discarding newspapers became a matter of great interest internationally following publication of Nicholson Baker's article in the *New Yorker* in July 2000 in which he savagely attacked libraries, including the British Library, for discarding original newspapers after microfilming. This theme was developed in his book *Double fold: libraries and the assault on paper* in which he decried the low quality of much microfilm and presented persuasive pleas for retaining originals, giving examples of newsprint in pristine condition<sup>19</sup>. Baker failed to appreciate that many British provincial newspapers were in such poor condition that there was no question of anyone being allowed to have access to them.

Baker's views prompted a spirited response from librarians and scholars<sup>20</sup>. A measured response to Baker is available from the ARL website<sup>21</sup>. A fuller discussion of the importance of this can be found in Chapter 8. The question of what should happen to newspapers once they have been microfilmed is an important issue. The publication of *Guidelines on the storage and retention of local newspapers and microfilms*<sup>22</sup> in 2002 recommended that all local authorities should make adequate provision for the storage, collection and preservation of local

newspapers and that master negative microform should be registered with the Register of Preservation Microfilms which now includes newspapers. A paper to the Consultative Group on Newspapers indicated that,

Many libraries do not have sufficient space to store newspapers. Some regional authorities have sought to dispose of newspaper titles. Such an action is an implicit acknowledgement that regional authorities do not see the retention of original copies of newspapers as part of their core function<sup>23</sup>.

The provision of copies of microfilmed newspapers to replace those at risk, especially from the NEWSPLAN 2000 project was regarded as a possible excuse for regional authorities to take active measures to dispose of originals once a microfilm was made available. For this reason, the regional implementation committees have been urged to consider the problem as a matter of urgency. A recent meeting of the Local Studies Group discussed the form that libraries were expected to sign whereby they agree to either destroy or ensure that there was no public access to originals once the microfilm arrived<sup>24</sup>. Considerable concern was expressed about the implications of this and the fact that it seemed to contradict the policy of retaining originals in the regions. However, it is accepted that the long term survival of originals depends on their not being used and this is a safeguard to ensure that originals are protected. Further discussion about storing newspapers appears on p. 205.

## Microfilms

As a surrogate preservation medium, microfilm has become the recognised preferred format for large collections of newspapers. It is by no means a new development to microfilm newspapers<sup>25</sup>. Microfilms themselves date back to the nineteenth century with John Benjamin Dancer's successful microphotography on daguerreotype plates. The first newspaper to be microfilmed was the *Evening News* in 1853 but the technology was not employed commercially until after 1926 when George McCarthy demonstrated a checkograph device at the American Bankers' Convention. In 1928 Eastman Kodak introduced the first commercially available machine for microphotography in banking with the Recordak continuous filming camera allowing microfilming of runs of journals. The first attempts to microfilm newspapers in the United States were made when New York Public Library tested the potential of microfilming newspapers in 1933 and in 1935 they started to microfilm backfiles of newspapers. Harvard University began microfilming its non-American newspapers in 1938, and in the same year the Library of Congress started its photoduplication unit. Other institutions followed suit and by 1941 George A Schegmann, Jr had sufficient information to publish an eleven page, 'Preliminary checklist of newspapers on microfilm' in the *Journal of Documentary Reproduction* in which he was able to assert, 'during the past few years thousands of volumes have been reproduced on microfilm by various agencies in the United States'<sup>26</sup>.

The Library of Congress inaugurated a fully-fledged newspaper preservation programme but despite its success, microfilming was still regarded as something of a novelty and the programme did not become a fully operational unit until after the end of World War 2<sup>27</sup>.

Commercial publishers soon recognised the potential market and Micro Photo (later taken over by Bell and Howell) made microfilming newspapers an important part of its business in 1946. In July 1949 the Library of Congress established a Microfilming Clearing House 'to serve as a central source of information on extensive microfilming projects involving newspapers, serials and manuscript collections either contemplated or underway at various institutions<sup>28</sup>. It began its *Microfilm Clearing House Bulletin* in March 1951, as an appendix to the *Library of Congress Information Bulletin*, which reported on new projects and recently filmed material. Later, the United States Newspaper Program required each participating state to establish priorities for microfilming newspapers. The project is discussed in Chapter 1.

Other countries soon recognised the importance of microfilm as a preservation medium for newspapers. France, Sweden, Denmark and the Federal Republic of Germany took an early and positive lead in microfilming newspapers in the 1950s, and whilst the efforts in most countries centred on the national library, the German example is interesting because it was conducted by a non-profit making organisation, Mikrofilm Archiv<sup>29</sup>. It was set up in 1965 as a cost sharing

group of libraries, archives and other interested bodies using newspapers, with the declared aim,

It remains the preservation of the German press and of German language publications published overseas, such as the exile newspapers of German emigrants, through microfilming and the making available of this microfilm to interested users<sup>30</sup>.

Its regular catalogues list microfilms available for sale and also what is available elsewhere in Germany as well as in the British Library and the Bibliothèque Nationale. Mikrofilm Archiv showed considerable interest in supporting standards for microfilming newspapers, and these appeared in 1976<sup>31</sup>. It differs from the European Register of Microfilm Masters which exists to record the existence of master microfilms throughout Europe rather than acting as a sales catalogue.

Since the 1950s newspapers in the United Kingdom have been microfilmed on a regular basis. The British Library began its newspaper microfilming programme in 1950 and sought permission to film British newspapers in copyright from the Newspaper Proprietor's Association, the Newspaper Society and the Scottish Daily Newspaper Society. At this stage the emphasis was on filming,

the new and unbound intake of United Kingdom publications. However, this plan was modified - partly because of the limitations of the microfilming facilities in the 1950s and partly because of changed priorities - and most microfilming of United Kingdom titles has since concentrated on volumes which are in a state of decay and on titles requested by British commercial orders<sup>32</sup>.



Much of the microfilming being done, especially after 1964, was of overseas newspapers but by 1977 the British Library was facing acute storage problems for its newspaper collections and solutions needed to be considered. For this reason a consultative document, *The newspaper collections and the future* (1977) was circulated. It argued that

the most cost-effective method of meeting the storage and conservation problems is to expand the microfilming programme.

It went on to propose that,

most newspapers acquired by the British Library from the early 1980s would be read on microfilm. But it would be many years before the proportion of issues on microfilm equalled that of newsprint still in use<sup>33</sup>.

The Library Association encouraged its specialist groups to make a response. Of these the Reference, Special and Information Section recognised the necessity to microfilm but thought that 'microfiche might be cheaper and more economical of space' They went on to advocate duplicate microfilms should be available in Bloomsbury to assist researchers<sup>34</sup>.

With publication of BS 5847, a standard was provided to which microfilming should conform. McDougall lists the appropriate ISO and British Standards to which microfilming should conform<sup>35</sup>. Although some excellent microfilm, especially from companies such as Kodak, later Recordak, was produced, there is also some very poor quality material. The Leicestershire local studies librarian, Aubrey Stevenson,

was particularly critical of the quality of microfilming undertaken at Leicestershire County Hall in the 1960s and 1970s.

It is reasonable to assume that since archival standards were only introduced in the 1980s, any microfilm made before that will not meet the requirements that have been agreed<sup>36</sup>.

These standards include the National Preservation Office's *Guide to preservation microfilming* which updates the *Microfilming manual* issued by the Mellon Microfilming Project in 1992<sup>37</sup>.

Unfortunately much of the microfilm produced in the 1960s and 1970s was poor quality. DD's experience of using a microfilm of the *Loughborough Monitor* from 1960 indicated that some microfilm was illegible and therefore unusable. The experience of all the NEWSPLAN project officers confirmed this. Ruth Cowley<sup>38</sup> ably summed up the common problems and faults with microfilm, including film made from dirty and creased originals; image over-reduced - usually to fit two pages on one frame; text obscured by hands, etc; illegible text because of shine on pages, shadows; missing text; edges missing; filmed from tight bindings and missing text in gutters; images too faint or too dark; incomplete films with missing issues and information incorrectly recorded, or not recorded on boxes. She also identified some of the common problems encountered by regular users of microfilm including the wrong film in the box and films wound backwards or inside out on the spools. All the project officers testified to poor quality film.

The 1977 BLNL Consultative paper recognised that 'Microfilms produced by the Library will continue to conform to the highest agreed standards of archival permanence'<sup>39</sup>. Duplicate negatives would be produced and it was proposed that they would be stored at a different location from the master negatives. It was suggested that the National Library of Wales might supply suitable accommodation.

Rosemary Wells, author of the first survey to audit the condition of newspapers in the South West of England, stated,

that microfilming to recognised standards offered the best medium for preserving and ensuring long-term survival of contents<sup>40</sup>.

Because so much poor quality microfilm had been discovered a set of basic guidelines for preservation microfilming was undertaken by Jennifer McDougall in 1994 and the resulting publication, *Guidelines for the microfilming of newspapers*<sup>41</sup>, covered editorial preparation, choice of agency, physical preparation, microfilming procedures, checking, boxing, labelling and storage.

In 1996 IFLA published *Guidelines for the preservation microfilming of newspapers*, which it was planned to translate into French and Spanish. The Strategic Plan of the IFLA Round Table on Newspapers<sup>42</sup> announced a plan to prepare a supplement to these guidelines to allow for possible future digitisation of newspapers and also to review the ISO standards for film density.

Until the 1980s most newspaper microfilming in the United Kingdom was either at the British Library Newspaper Library, by newspapers publishers or at local library level and little attempt was made to co-ordinate filming. A survey published in the *Library Association Record* in 1960 indicated that many newspapers were commercially microfilmed by Micromethods, including the *Carlisle Journal* and the *Mansfield Advertiser*. A number of publishers filmed their own titles, including the *Leicester Mercury* and the *Bolton Evening News*. At this stage only some of the London local weekly titles such as the Holloway and Hornsey Press were filmed at BLNL<sup>43</sup>.

BLNL commissioned a survey of microfilm of current newspapers in 1986. Its main findings were that 50% of current newspapers (including some with minor local variations) were being filmed externally and that the quality was variable with some microfilming not being done to the British Standard<sup>44</sup>. It showed that 533 newspapers listed in the survey were not taken by the British Library and that 15 library authorities and 10 newspaper offices had their own microfilming facilities. One of the recommendations of this report was that a permanent member of staff should be appointed for negotiating purchases of microfilm made elsewhere.

(Experience shows that this is not a simple matter). Sample reels of film are normally purchased and examined for quality. As a matter of general policy the Newspaper Library usually tries to ensure that the master negatives are kept in a satisfactory and secure conditions. In negotiating the purchase of copy microfilm we therefore normally ask about the location of the master negative, and may offer where appropriate to store it in future

in the British Library. This normally involves the British Library sharing the cost of making the original film, and negotiating the right to copy in future in the British Library. Where unsatisfactory microfilm is identified, the Newspaper Library will do what it can tactfully to encourage an improvement<sup>45</sup>.

The consultative paper sought opinions on the suitability of microform as a medium for the conservation of newspapers but admitted,

the long term permanence of microfilm must remain necessarily open to debate but tests indicate that microfilm correctly processed and stored should endure for as long as acid-free paper - that is substantially longer than most newsprint created today<sup>46</sup>.

Bob Harriman confirmed that

Current life expectancy, when film is produced, processed and stored in accordance with international standards is 500 years<sup>47</sup>.

In 1985 Bernard Williams offered the following predictions on the relative longevity of various formats showing that<sup>48</sup>,

	Archival life	format	obsolescence	integrity	Legal dep
Microfilm	indefinite	good	Very good	good	none
Magnetic	1 year	poor	poor	poor	none
On-line	none	N/A	N/A	poor	none
Optical disk	10 years	poor	poor	fair	none
CD ROM	10 years	fair	fair	fair	none
Print media	Variable	good	Excellent	good	good

However, he based his predictions for print media on good quality rag based paper rather than newsprint. Similarly, his predictions for

microfilm longevity were based on silver-halide microfilm, reinforced by this statement,

only 35mm 'black on clear', silver-halide, microfilm is suitable as a long-term archival medium. There are no archival standards for microfiche or for diazo or colour film, or other types of film processing<sup>49</sup>.

By 1986, as a result of the recommendations of its Preservation Scrutiny, the British Library had decided to adopt microfilming as the principal preservation medium for newspapers and from that date binding current provincial newspapers on receipt was stopped. Although discussions continue to centre upon digitisation as a preservation medium for newspapers, it is still British Library policy that microfilming is the most appropriate and affordable method of preserving vast numbers of provincial newspapers for the foreseeable future.

Chapter 7 examines the problems and achievements surrounding large scale microfilming of provincial newspapers and looks particularly at the progress of the NEWSPLAN project.

### **Storage of microfilm**

Over the past 25 years there have been great improvements in storage of microfilms. Published guidelines exist: including BS:1153:1992 *Recommendations for processing and storage of silver -gelatin -type microfilm* and in *UNSP Microfilming specifications and inspection guidelines*. Acid free paper wraps and acid free boxes ensure the film is

stored in a neutral environment, provided the boxes themselves are stored under suitable conditions. McDougall stated,

Adequate storage must be provided for all generations of microfilm, but is essential for master negatives, if these are to be retained for archival purposes<sup>50</sup>.

Given appropriate storage, microfilm is considered to have a lifespan of up to 500 years, as we have seen above, making it the most suitable medium for longevity. She advocated microfilm be kept in a controlled environment in accordance with the requirements of BS1153. For master negatives a temperature of 14-16 degrees centigrade at 50% relative humidity is required but 18 degrees centigrade for the positive with 55% relative humidity was appropriate.

### **International Coalition on Newspapers**

The International Coalition on Newspapers (ICON) arose from the Symposium on access to and preservation of global newspapers held in Washington DC in 1997 as a result of concerns expressed by national libraries on the problems associated with storing, preservation and access to foreign materials. Supported by IFLA, the British Library, the National Endowment for the Humanities and OCLC, a Working Group was set up to report on the issues surrounding the problems associated with foreign newspaper collection and access and with the aim of producing a Global Union List of Newspapers<sup>51</sup>. Its brief is to develop strategies to preserve and to improve access to newspapers from around the world and to develop bibliographic access, indexing and

resolving copyright issues. In many ways it seems rather similar to the IFLA Section on Newspapers, which was discussed in Chapter 1.

## **Digitisation**

Newspaper digitisation projects abound. In December 2002, Gale, in agreement with *The Times*, launched a digital edition of *The Times* 1785-1985<sup>52</sup> based on remicrofilming the newspaper prior to scanning using Mekel M500 greyscale scanners which produce high contrast images. The end product allows searchers to retrieve information by relevance and keyword searches as well as facilities for advance searching and by date. The publishers hope that this will negate the need for searching cumbersome indexes and provide a user-friendly accessible resource. A number of public library authorities, such as Cambridgeshire, have already subscribed to it but the cost will undoubtedly prevent others from doing so. It is an excellent example of a commercially driven venture which will attract widespread use.

It would be unrealistic to assume that digitisation is the answer to allowing users access to the information they require. Many of the initiatives are still in the experimental stages, as the following examples illustrate. Previously a number of initiatives involved scanning from microfilm using proven technologies. Speaking at the LASER/GLAN seminar in 2001, Ed King gave an illuminating paper on 'Digitisation from microfilm: the BL experience'<sup>53</sup>. His commitment to digitisation was positive. He outlined the project to digitise the Burney collection of early



English newspapers which was intended as a feasibility study to determine whether it was possible to scan microfilm to build up a substantial body of retrievable text. The Burney collection of early English newspapers was chosen because it presented no copyright problems; readers normally have no access to the originals and the original print was of variable quality<sup>54</sup>. When the project began, storage was a problem because of the low capacity of the scanners but the situation improved once enhancements were made in 1995. The project accomplished scanning of the newspapers for 1789-1791 and storing 21 gigabytes of information. Ultimately 130 gigabytes of storage will be required for the whole collection. The project was intended as a pilot and it demonstrated that clear and acceptable images can be made. Limitations of the software at the time meant that retrieval was restricted to title, date, and publisher.

A Newspaper Digitisation Programme Board has now been set up in the British Library to coordinate and plan present and future newspaper digitisation projects. Projects include completion of digitising the Burney Collection and an application to the Higher Education Funding Council for England to digitise runs of selected out of copyright national and regional papers from the seventeenth to the twentieth centuries. A list of titles was submitted to a small group of newspaper users, including Peter Mandler, Aled Jones and DD for comment and the final list was submitted in October 2003. The British Library is committed to exploring

possible projects with third party organisations to find potential partners to digitise newspapers out of copyright, ie. those from 1800-1930.

In April 2003 the BLNL affirmed that it was still digitising by using OCR scanning from microfilm for both the Burney Collection and the *Penny Illustrated Paper*<sup>55</sup>. As part of an ambitious project to bring the resources of the BL to a wider audience, the 'Collect Britain' project includes *The Penny Illustrated Paper* which had been scanned and OCR'd from 1860-1913<sup>56</sup>. A live version was launched on May 21st 2003. This is a good example of the BL working in partnership in order to obtain funding, which in this case was obtained from the New Opportunities Fund.

Delegates at the 4th NEWSPLAN conference in London in April 2002 were extremely impressed with the presentation on 'Tiden: a Nordic digital newspaper library'.<sup>57</sup> Introducing it, Maijlis Bremer-Laamanen explained that the cooperative project involved libraries from Finland, Denmark, Norway and Sweden and covered Scandinavian newspapers 1640-1860 with the intention of testing the feasibility of using microfilm as a base for digitisation to allow full text retrieval. The project overcame special problems with OCR of gothic letters and offers impressive access to the contents of these newspapers. A pilot Caribbean Newspaper Imaging Project concluded that 'there is still no good, cost effective means of providing the researcher with full text or connecting

story lines broken by column and page breaks<sup>58</sup>. In 2001 the Marriott Library at the University of Utah was awarded \$93,000 to digitise the contents of three historic weekly Utah newspapers which have been made freely available on the Internet<sup>59</sup>. It is claimed that its methodology is affordable because the project is being implemented in stages so that institutions can digitise short runs of newspapers. As in Norfolk, OCR had to be abandoned because it was too expensive to implement.

### **OCLC historic newspapers project**

Publishers were quick to exploit the commercial potential of microfilming runs of newspapers and there is no doubt that making historic newspapers available online is an equally attractive commercial opportunity. In the United States the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC), which maintains a vast network database of MARC records and the CONSER serials database, offers an archival historical newspaper service using Olive software<sup>60</sup>. OCLC claims advantages of greater legibility over scanning to TIFF and then converting to text using OCR, and overcomes the problems of corrupted text. Olive software uses Bitmap indexing technology which breaks the page down into components -articles, photos and ads which are processed to generate XML-encoded word-patterns. It allows full text retrieval and the result is attractive and user friendly. A pilot project involving text from four British papers<sup>61</sup>, including the *Daily News*, *Manchester Guardian*, *Weekly Dispatch* and the *News of the World*, 1851-1918 is available on the

Internet . It is possible to conduct keyword searches but because of the poor quality of some of the print false drops impair the quality of retrieval. The project scanned microfilmed pages and a digital archive was produced from the TIFF files. Active Paper Archive enables the reader to read directly from the images and uses Adaptive Probability Fuzzy Search to compensate for textual inaccuracies. The pilot project is freely available but access is sometimes difficult outside the British Library reading rooms. The print quality from some newspapers is not particularly clear and this can diminish the quality of retrieval.

### **Electronic newspapers**

By the 1980s British national newspapers saw a commercial opportunity for electronic archiving of text and making their contents available through online databases such as *World Reporter* for a fee, confident that this would be well used by the business sector. By 1987 *World Reporter*, later *FT Profile*, carried the text from most broadsheet national daily and Sunday newspapers. Later a reasonable number of provincial daily newspapers, such as the *Leicester Mercury* and *Liverpool Echo* also became available.

Many current newspapers are now available electronically, either on CD-ROM or on the Internet, or both. In 1988 the first British newspaper to be made available on CD-ROM was the *Northern Echo* and it was followed by *The Independent* (1988-), *The Times* (1990-), and the *Guardian* (1990-), the *Financial Times* (1991- ) and the *Daily Telegraph* (1994-)

some of which are networked in academic libraries. Illustrations are rarely included, and advertisements, letters and even reviews may be excluded. Initially there was no standard interface which presented access problems. Retrieval can be limited if the print is corrupted, and the quality of printouts from PDF is often blurred and difficult to read.

By the early 1990s most major newspaper groups were considering producing their papers online to improve production. Improvements in electronic publishing packages made it possible to compose full pages electronically with TIFF outputs. As scanning techniques improved it became possible to produce a bit-mapped image of a full page and to capture the text on to an ASCII file enabling information to be stored in TIFF format for archival purposes<sup>62</sup>. However, few newspapers offer much retrospective coverage and readers may have to pay to search an archive if it exists<sup>63</sup>. Again coverage is rarely complete and, as with CD-ROMs, peripheral information and illustrations may not be provided. The amount of information available differs from newspaper to newspaper.

The British Library now maintains a list of over 100 provincial newspapers available on the Internet<sup>64</sup>. Speaking at the LASER/GLAN seminar on Newspapers and Life Long Learning in London in February 2001 Jill Allbrooke<sup>65</sup>, then Deputy Head of BLNL, pointed out that some of the sites of local newspapers are very informative but that others are little more than advertising. She singled out the site for the *Ham and High* which is no more than an advertisement for the paper. The first

exclusively on-line newspaper in England was the *Thamesmead Gazette*. The disadvantage is that few offer access to back copies. Additionally, on-line versions often omit features, letters, and advertisements although this is hard to measure. The Newsquest Media Group makes many of the papers it publishes available under the *This is* heading: titles include the *Darlington and Stockton Times*; *Evesham Journal*; *Leicester Mercury* and *Northern Echo* with a link from the BLNL website. The free '*This is Leicestershire*' site only provided minimal news information when accessed. *The Belfast Telegraph* is a rare example of a newspaper offering a charged-for retrospective archival service. Sometimes papers claim they have an archive, such as the *Sevenoaks Chronicle*, but no details are available. For up-to-date information on what titles are available it is helpful to consult Internet sources such as *Ecola newsstand*; *Yahoo's directory of on-line newspapers*; *AJR Newslink* or *Editor and Publisher on-line newspapers* as well as the BLNL website.

In some cases, when Internet services prove inadequate, it will be necessary to turn to on-line full text retrieval systems which scan current newspapers and periodicals, and may enable researchers to access the archive. Two of the leading services are *FT Profile Information* and *Lexis-Nexis* which carry the full text of a number of leading provincial newspapers and journals including the *Birmingham Post*. Access to these services is subscription based. Televisual is another subscription service, which was responsible for producing the CD ROM of the

*Northern Echo*, but has now gone over to provision on the Internet to which access will incur charges. The issues relating to long-term accessibility of digital files will be discussed in Chapter 8.

- 
- <sup>1</sup> R G Charlesworth (1977) The local authority. *Aslib Proceedings* 29 (11-12), 407-8.
- <sup>2</sup> R Cowley (1990) *Report of the NEWSPLAN project in the North Western Region*. London: British Library, xxv.
- <sup>3</sup> G Banik (1988) 'Problems of mass conservation of newsprint in libraries', in I P Gibb, ed. *Newspaper preservation and access: Proceedings of the international symposium held in London*. London and Paris: K G Saur, 216-22.
- <sup>4</sup> Jim Lyons (2003) Newspaper and document care and preservation <http://jimlyons.com/Preservation.html>
- <sup>5</sup> G Boston (1994) New technology - friend or foe. *IFLA Journal* 20, 335.
- <sup>6</sup> A helpful introductory survey can be found in (2003) 'Preserving newspapers' Library of Congress Preservation Directorate at <http://loc.gov/preserv/care/newspap.html>
- <sup>7</sup> G Banik (1988), 3
- <sup>8</sup> (2003) 'Preserving newspapers'. <http://loc.gov/preserv/care/newspap.html>
- <sup>9</sup> R Gordon (1989) *Report of the NEWSPLAN project in the East Midlands*. London: British Library, 38.
- <sup>10</sup> D Parry (1989) *Report of the NEWSPLAN project in the Northern Region*. London: British Library, 37.
- <sup>11</sup> *ibid*, 38.
- <sup>12</sup> *ibid*, 35.
- <sup>13</sup> R Cowley (1990) *Report of the NEWSPLAN project in the North Western Region*. London: British Library, xxiii.
- <sup>14</sup> (2003) Preserving Newspapers at <http://loc.gov/preserv/newspap.html>
- <sup>15</sup> (2003) <http://jimlyons.com/Preservation.html>
- <sup>16</sup> (1999) Preservation needs assessment survey report: British Library Newspaper Library. November, 1. Unpublished.
- <sup>17</sup> *ibid*, 2.
- <sup>18</sup> M Crump (2002) 'The British Library's policy with regard to newspaper disposal', in D. McKitterick *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 87-98.
- <sup>19</sup> N Baker (2000) Deadline: the author's desperate bid to save America's past. *New Yorker* July 24, 42-61. (2001) *Double fold: libraries and the assault on paper*. New York: Random House.
- <sup>20</sup> A McCrady (2000) 'Preserving newspapers', documented these responses which are available at *Abbey Newsletter* <http://palimpsest.stanford.edu/byorg/abbey/an/>
- <sup>21</sup> Talking points in response to Nicholson Baker's article in the *New Yorker* July 24 is available at <http://arl.org/preserv/baker1.html>. This outlines the main thrust of Baker's attack and offers comment.
- <sup>22</sup> (2003) *Guidelines on the storage and retention of local newspapers and microfilms* at <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/NEWSPLANretention.html>
- <sup>23</sup> Minute of the Consultative Group on Newspapers CGN 2002/3



- <sup>24</sup> Minute of the meeting of the Local Studies Group National Committee meeting February 25<sup>th</sup> 2004.
- <sup>25</sup> A Meckler (1982) *A history of scholarly micropublishing in America 1938-1980*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press provides a useful summary of its history.
- <sup>26</sup> G A Schegmann, Jr (1941) Preliminary checklist of newspapers on microfilm. *Journal of Documentary Reproduction*, June.
- <sup>27</sup> T Mills (1981) Preserving yesterday's news for today's historian. *Journal of Library History* 16(3), 463-82.
- <sup>28</sup> (1984) *Newspapers in Microform*. Washington: Library of Congress, vii.
- <sup>29</sup> H Bohrman (1989) 'The importance of microfilm in the collection, preservation and use of newspapers with special reference to the production and acquisition of microfilm', in *Mikrofilm Archiv*. 8th edn. Dortmund: Mikrofilm Archiv, 9.
- <sup>30</sup> H Lohse (1989) *Mikrofilm Archiv*. 8th edn. Dortmund: Mikrofilm Archiv, 3. A helpful outline in English is provided as a prefatory leaflet.
- <sup>31</sup> (1985) *The photographing of newspapers on 35 mm roll film*. Berlin: Beuth Press. It conforms to ISO 2707.
- <sup>32</sup> (1977) *The Newspaper collections and the future. A British Library Consultative paper*. London: British Library, 5.
- <sup>33</sup> *ibid*, 6.
- <sup>34</sup> Views and comments on the consultative paper, prepared by Charles Toase and Vaughan Whibley on behalf of the Reference, Special and Information Section of the Library Association. October 1977, 3. Unpublished. Filed in the ISG Archive.
- <sup>35</sup> J McDougall (1994) *Guidelines for the microfilming of newspapers*. Dublin and London: National Library of Ireland and the British Library, 20.
- <sup>36</sup> NEWSPLAN2000 Project Handbook <http://NEWSPLAN2000.org/project.handbook.html>
- <sup>37</sup> National Preservation Office (2000) *Guide to preservation microfilming*. London: National Preservation Office. Mellon Microfilming Project (1992) *Microfilming manual*. London: Mellon Microfilming Project, British Library and National Preservation Office.
- <sup>38</sup> R Cowley (1990) 'Common problems and faults found in the microfilms which we saw', xxv-xxvi. See note 13
- <sup>39</sup> (1977) *The newspaper collections and the future*. London: British Library, .
- <sup>40</sup> <http://bl.uk/collections/nplan.html>, 2.
- <sup>41</sup> J McDougall (1994) *Guidelines for the microfilming of newspapers*. Dublin and London: National Library of Ireland and the British Library.
- <sup>42</sup> (1996) *Guidelines for the preservation microfilming of newspapers*. Newspapers Round Table Strategic Plan, 2001-2003, 2.2 at <http://ifla.org/VII/s39/annual/sprtnews/html>
- <sup>43</sup> (1960) Newspapers on microfilm. *Library Association Record* 62, 256-8.
- <sup>44</sup> 'Survey of microfilm of current newspapers'. Minute of the British Library Consultative Group on Newspapers. CG.87/3
- <sup>45</sup> *ibid*.
- <sup>46</sup> (1977) *The Newspaper collections and the future*, 8.
- <sup>47</sup> R B Harriman (2002) The United States Newspaper Program: scope, achievement and progress. Paper presented at the 4<sup>th</sup> NEWSPLAN Conference London <http://bl.uk/concord/inc/NEWSPLAN>
- <sup>48</sup> B S W Williams (1985/6) Optical disks and newspaper preservation. *Information Media and Technology* 1, 3-15.
- <sup>49</sup> (2003) Project Handbook, 18.
- <sup>50</sup> J McDougall (1994), See note 41.
- <sup>51</sup> <http://icon.crl.edu/al>
- <sup>52</sup> This is described in R Readings and M Holland (2003) The Thunderer on the web. *Library and Information Update* 2(7), 38-41
- <sup>53</sup> Ed King (2001) 'Digitisation from microfilm: the BL experience' at the LASER/GLAN seminar on Newspapers and Life Long Learning in London on 9 February 2001. This is available at [http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met\\_56.pdf](http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met_56.pdf)
- <sup>54</sup> M Alexander (1998) Digitising the Burney collection. Proceedings of the 4th NEWSPLAN Conference <http://bl.concord/linc/NEWSPLANconf/> / 59-62
- <sup>55</sup> (2003) Minute of the UK and Ireland NEWSPLAN Panel April. <http://bl.concord/linc/NEWSPLANconf>
- <sup>56</sup> <http://bl.uk/collectbritain>



---

<sup>57</sup> <http://tiden.kb.se>

<sup>58</sup> M Deegan, E Steinvel and E King (2002) Digitising historic newspapers: progress and prospects. *RLG DigiNews* 6 (4) 1-11 <http://rlg.org/preserv/diginews>

<sup>59</sup> K Arlitsch, L Yapp and K Edge (2003) The Utah digital newspapers project. *D-Lib Magazine* 9 (3) <http://dlib.org/march03/arlitsch>

<sup>60</sup> <http://oclc.org/digitalpreservation/about>

<sup>61</sup> This is described in M Deegan et al (2002) [http://rlg.org/preserv/diginews/v6\\_n4\\_feature](http://rlg.org/preserv/diginews/v6_n4_feature)

<sup>62</sup> R Withey Developments in electronic storage and access to newspaper data. Unpublished paper for the BLNL Consultative Group. Minute CGN92/7.

<sup>63</sup> L Duhon (1998) Enhancing a newspaper collection using the World Wide Web. *International Reference Services Quarterly* 3, discusses the situation for accessing archives of newspapers.

<sup>64</sup> <http://bl.uk/collections/englwsh.html>

<sup>65</sup> Jill Allbrooke (2001) Newspapers and the web- past, present and future at the LASER/GLAN seminar on Newspapers and Life Long Learning in London on 9 February 2001. This is available at [http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met\\_56.pdf](http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met_56.pdf)

## **CHAPTER SEVEN**

### **NEWSPLAN**

The award by the Heritage Lottery Fund in 2000 of five million pounds for preservation microfilming of local newspapers in the United Kingdom was an endorsement both of the importance of local newspapers and also of microfilming as a preservation medium for newspaper files. This chapter discusses the history and importance of the British Library's NEWSPLAN project. The chapter will focus on NEWSPLAN in the English regions because this study is concerned with access to English provincial newspapers rather than those for the entire United Kingdom and Ireland. Particular reference will be made to the East Midlands region as DD was involved in this project from the start. Although NEWSPLAN has been well documented, no study has previously attempted to trace its historical development.

#### **Historical background**

As seen in the previous chapter, newspapers in the United Kingdom have been microfilmed on a regular basis since the 1950s. The NEWSPLAN project began relatively modestly. Charles A Toase, Editor of the *Bibliography of British Newspapers*, stated that NEWSPLAN, later to become the Library's flagship, began because he and Stephen Green were becoming increasingly concerned about the rapid deterioration of newspaper files in provincial libraries and the appalling

conditions in which they were being housed. They dreamed up a project to audit the condition of provincial newspapers throughout the United Kingdom, and enlisted the support and commitment of regional library bureaux, which led to the establishment of the NEWSPLAN project.

As early as 1978 the Executive Board of the South West Regional Library Board (SWRLS) voiced concern that newspapers were deteriorating and were in urgent need of preservation and proposed a research project to investigate the situation<sup>1</sup>. In 1981 SWRLS discussed the matter again and John Beard of Hampshire County Library Service offered accommodation for the project. Funding proved problematic but the British Library Reference Division agreed to allocate partial funding and Rosemary Wells started work in 1983 as the Project Officer. The aims of the project were threefold,

to offer librarians information on the availability and suitability of files for microfilming; publicising general information on the many non-library newspaper collections in the south-west; and collecting data for future volumes of the *Bibliography of British Newspapers*<sup>2</sup>.

The work was intended as a pilot and it was hoped that its recommendations could be considered by other English regions, as well as in Scotland, Wales and Ireland. The main conclusions reached were,

that many newspaper files were deteriorating rapidly, some local files are unique and require urgent conservation treatment, many titles have been microfilmed badly and need re-filming; some local authorities are interested in the preservation of their holdings, while others are aware of the problem but unaware of the correct storage procedures, etc.; several organisations involved in microfilming of newspaper files have devised cost-sharing arrangements with other

institutions -though many other opportunities of co-ordination and co-operation exist which have not been recognised or taken advantage of<sup>3</sup>.

The report accepted that,

tackling the problem was beyond the capacity of any single organisation, that limited resources could be used through co-ordinated and co-operative programmes, and that microfilming to recognised standards offered the best medium for preserving and ensuring long-term survival of contents<sup>4</sup>.

As a result the British Library Newspaper Library decided that NEWSPLAN should be a national research project to assess the extent and standard of newspaper microfilming throughout the United Kingdom. As hoped, publication of the report and a number of seminars, including one at Bristol in May 1986, to launch the project and to discuss its findings, stimulated considerable interest throughout the United Kingdom and led to other regions promptly following suit.

The first to do so was the North Western region<sup>5</sup> which had experience of bibliographic work through the highly successful Lancashire Bibliography, established in 1950, which produced regular thematic bibliographies on aspects of Lancashire life. It agreed to defer work on a bibliography of the textile industry in order to produce a NEWSPLAN report. The resulting project was a co-operative venture between the Lancashire Bibliography and the BLNL with the Lancashire Bibliography carrying out the work and the BLNL sharing costs and undertaking to publish the completed report. The area covered was extended beyond

Lancashire to include Cheshire, Greater Manchester, Merseyside and the Isle of Man. The project's aims were:

- 1) to locate all extant copies of newspapers ever published in the North West and held in the North West region;
- 2) to record the holdings and their locations
- 3) to record the extent of microfilming, and assess the standard of this work
- 4) to make recommendations for priorities in future microfilming, and in the provision of BLNL funding for it<sup>6</sup>.

Shortly afterwards the East Midland Regional Library System (EMRLS) discussed the South West NEWSPLAN report and its implications. It decided to conduct a preliminary investigation into the state of newspapers in the region<sup>7</sup>. Michael Brook of Nottingham University and Laurence Craik of Nottinghamshire Libraries sent a questionnaire to the eight county libraries in the region: Cambridgeshire; Derbyshire; Leicestershire; Lincolnshire; Norfolk; Northamptonshire; Nottinghamshire and Suffolk as well as the university libraries of East Anglia, Leicester, Loughborough and Nottingham. Paragraphs 7-8 reviewed microfilming and showed that Northamptonshire and Suffolk microfilmed all their current titles and that most counties had active retrospective microfilming programmes, with the exception of Cambridgeshire. Their findings indicated that there was scope for fruitful negotiation with BLNL.

It is felt that there is scope for useful discussions with the B.L. on the microfilming and storage of local newspapers, on policies towards free newspapers, on conservation problems, and on a regional policy related to files of national newspapers<sup>8</sup>.

EMRLS approached the British Library with a proposal for a project similar to that carried out in the South West to be based at Loughborough University under the direction of DD. In 1987 Ruth Gordon was seconded from Derbyshire Libraries as Project Officer and she began work. The conduct and progress of the project was overseen by a Steering Group whose terms of reference were as follows,

The Steering Committee will be an advisory and consultative body through which the British Library and the East Midlands Regional Library System views on the development of the project will be presented and to which the Project Officer will furnish regular reports. It will offer appropriate guidance and advice on the action that the Project Officer should take and will provide a forum for discussion of all aspects of the project including the final recommendations<sup>9</sup>.

One of its first tasks was to agree on a more detailed definition of a newspaper than those discussed in Chapter 1 in order to assist the project officer to decide what material should be considered. After some discussion a working definition was adopted,

A serial publication normally printed fortnightly or more frequently on sale or issued freely to the general public containing news, comment and/or local advertising which is not solely the organ of a particular body, society or interest group. It may be published in the East Midlands region, or outside it but have substantially East Midlands news coverage and it may be in any language. If it is the publication of a specialised interest group e.g. Community Associations, political parties, it will only be included if it contains a wider base than the group itself. An attempt will be made to include purely advertising papers unless the advertisements are all from one source (e.g. Estate agents property papers). Monthly publications will only be included where local knowledge suggests that the publication does fill a gap in an otherwise poorly covered area<sup>10</sup>.

Despite this, the final project did list a number of estate agents' lists of property that contained no news items on the grounds that information about properties could be of use for researchers in the future.

Almost simultaneously, the Local History Librarians Group of the Northern Metropolitan and County Chief Librarians' Association expressed their concern about the condition of newspapers in the area covered by the Northern Regional Library System (NRLS) <sup>11</sup>. They were aware of the examples of the North West and East Midlands and took steps to set up their own regional NEWSPLAN survey in February 1987 with joint funding from the nine public library authorities in the region and BLNL <sup>12</sup>. In line with the other regions a Steering Committee was established and a series of objectives were defined:

- 1) to liaise with the British Library Newspaper Library and the public and academic libraries, newspaper publishers, record offices and other archives in the Northern Region, including those in private hands, in order to produce a list of holdings of local newspapers in the region.
- 2) To record the form, condition and availability of both newspaper and microfilm holdings.
- 3) To advise on priorities for the holdings of local newspaper files
- 4) To advise on priorities for the microfilming of local newspapers and advise on suitable agents for such work
- 5) To recommend which newspapers should be filmed on a regional and co-operative basis
- 6) To examine the recommendations of the NEWSPLAN report of the pilot project in the South West Region in relation to the Northern Region<sup>13</sup>.

Meanwhile the West Midlands Regional Library System (WMRLS) made a proposal in 1987 for a NEWSPLAN project and a working party and steering committee were set up. The project officer Tracey Watkins

began work in 1988 and the project took thirteen months. In keeping with other projects, some time was taken in discussing what definition of a newspaper should be employed and in this case the North Western region's was adopted,

A daily or weekly printed publication on sale, or issued freely to the general public, which devotes part of its space to local, national or international news which may also contain advertising, comment and other matters of general interest, and which is not solely the organ of a particular society, body or interest group<sup>14</sup>.

Thus estate agents' news sheets, community magazines and papers that consisted of 100% advertising could be excluded. The first task of its steering committee was to define the objectives of the project,

- a) To liaise with the BLNL, the public and academic libraries, newspaper publishers, record offices and other archives in the West Midlands region, including those in private hands, in order to produce a list of holdings of local newspapers in the West Midlands Metropolitan Borough and the counties of Hereford and Worcester, Shropshire, Staffordshire and Warwickshire.
- b) To record the format, condition and availability of both newspaper and microfilm holdings
- c) To advise on priorities for holdings of originals of newspaper files
- d) To advise on priorities for conservation and microfilming with a view to the assessment of the preservation needs of newspaper collections and the encouragement of microfilm and preservation programmes as the combination of the effects of wear and tear and chemical change have put at risk large quantities of newspaper files
- e) To maintain technical standards for the microfilming of local newspapers and advise on suitable agents for such work
- f) to recommend which newspapers should be microfilmed on a regional and co-operative basis
- g) To examine the recommendations of the *NEWSPLAN: report of the pilot project in the South-West* in relation to the West Midlands region.
- h) To prepare a final report for publication by the British Library<sup>15</sup>.



Although it was one of the last projects to be completed in the first tranche, the Yorkshire and Humberside Joint Library Services had expressed interest in microfilming newspapers as early as 1983. However, it was only after the Bristol seminar of 1986 that discussions began in earnest and a Working Party was set up and a formal application for joint funding between the British Library and eleven public libraries and the universities of Bradford, Hull, Leeds and Sheffield was presented in 1987. Successful negotiations led to the project officer being appointed in March 1988.

The chief aim of this, and other subsequent projects has been to collect and record dates on the surviving files of newspapers in the region, so that recommendations can be followed up on how to preserve each title and hence achieve the overall goals of NEWSPLAN<sup>16</sup>.

In common with all the other projects, a steering committee was appointed and aims and objectives were defined. Slight differences in the terminology of the aims of each project demonstrate a willingness on the part of the British Library to adopt a supportive rather than a prescriptive role. Certainly when DD was supervising the East Midlands project, the attitude of Eve Johannson, was that it was up to the regional steering groups to advise on policy. While this had its advantages, it did result in different NEWSPLAN projects adopting different arrangements for the published volumes. Thus East Midlands followed the example of the South West and adopted a county by county arrangement with titles arranged alphabetically within each county. Most other regions, including West Midlands, Yorkshire and Humberside and Northern preferred a straight alphabetical listing by title.

It is interesting to note that the BLNL had not expected such large reports from East Midlands and the North West and a note in the minutes of the Consultative Group on Newspapers stated that 'both these reports will be larger than expected'<sup>17</sup>.

The region that presented the greatest difficulty in terms of funding was the London and South East Region (LASER). Although the LASER Management Committee was fully aware of the importance of NEWSPLAN, the complexity and disparity of a region containing 43 local library authorities and a large number of provincial newspapers meant that it was not possible to proceed in the same way as the other English regions. In 1989 a Feasibility Study funded by BLNL was commissioned and undertaken by Rosemary Wells<sup>18</sup>. She drew attention to the magnitude of the task, stated that a considerable amount of preservation work and listing had already taken place, and suggested that a Project Officer would need at least three years to complete the task. However, it was decided that because of the amount of work that had already been done and because of financial restraints, a part time co-ordinator should be appointed to work two days a week for 42 weeks over two years<sup>19</sup>. Funding was shared between most members of LASER and the British Library.

The principle [sic] aim of the LASER NEWSPLAN was to complete coverage of the British Isles by auditing the local newspaper collections in the same way that the work had been carried out across the whole of the remainder of the UK and Ireland<sup>20</sup>.

This broad aim was to be realised by the achievement of the following subsidiary objectives.

- 1) To produce a list of all local newspapers published and held in the Region
- 2) To record locations and holdings of titles
- 3) To indicate the extent of microfilmed titles and record the condition and standard of such films
- 4) To indicate the conditions of hard copy not yet filmed
- 5) To recommend priorities for future filming and funding for this purpose<sup>21</sup>.

Because the project officer was employed on a part-time basis, the project had to be conducted in a different way from those in other regions. Instead of making personal visits to examine the newspapers in all repositories holding newspapers, a postal survey was conducted.

Each of the 43 local library authorities was asked to complete a standard data collection form, to show dates of holdings and based on a standardised list of terms to identify the condition and the quality of both hard copy and film. It soon became apparent that the original estimate of the time required was insufficient and this was extended. The amount of work meant that assistance was required and DD was recruited to collect and interpolate information on the BLNL holdings.

The launch at the House of Commons of the LASER NEWSPLAN project in April 1996 marked a significant milestone in auditing the condition of files of local newspapers in libraries, record offices, newspaper offices, museums and local historical societies throughout the United Kingdom<sup>22</sup>. However, in all regions publication of a report was only the beginning.

## **Implementation**

An implementation committee was formed for each NEWSPLAN region, with the encouragement and participation of the Library and Information Council (LINC) and its NEWSPLAN panel (originally entitled NEWSPLAN sub-committee)<sup>23</sup> and BLNL. The task of these implementation committees is similar in each region: to ensure action to implement the recommendations of the reports and to encourage preservation microfilming of material at risk. In 1988 the Consultative Committee on Newspapers (CGN) was asked to consider the role of NEWSPLAN implementation committees. Their roles are outlined as follows:

- to represent all library authorities in membership in the Region and to provide contact with other newspaper experts in archive collections and in the newspaper industry
- to agree lists of newspaper titles still to be microfilmed in the Region in a costed programme with priorities indicated
- to collect information from all member authorities in the Region and from all other sources on additional titles microfilmed since completion of the NEWSPLAN research
- to report at intervals to the British Library Newspaper Library with information to update the NEWSPLAN project officers' reports on new microfilming undertaken, new titles, etc.
- to monitor progress regularly and report not less than annually to the NCRLC [National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation]
- to support individual libraries and member bodies in their own microfilming programmes and to ensure that the commitment to newspaper microfilming is being actively pursued; and to consider if necessary the need to raise funds privately in order to promote new programmes
- to help disseminate the results of the NEWSPLAN research in the Region and to promote awareness of preservation problems and needs
- to provide one member for the NCRLC national committee on NEWSPLAN<sup>24</sup>.

The primary objectives of the Yorkshire and Humberside Implementation Committee are typical of most:

To assemble lists of newspapers still to be microfilmed in the region and to agree on the best course of action to be recommended for each  
To agree on priorities for action as suggested in this report  
To collect information from all authorities in the region on additional titles filmed since completion of the report  
To report to BLNL at regular intervals with information to update the project officer's report  
To support individual libraries and other institutions on their own filming programmes and to ensure newspaper microfilming is being actively pursued  
To help disseminate the results of regular research, to promote awareness of the preservation problems of newspapers, and to encourage the observance of continued good filming standards<sup>25</sup>.

Similar objectives govern the conduct and activities of each English regional NEWSPLAN implementation committee and most meet regularly twice a year. The first to be set up was that of the South West Regional Library System which had its first meeting on 12 May 1987. As a result of its deliberations the BLNL began to microfilm a number of unique Cheltenham and Gloucester titles.

Formed in 1989, the EMRLS NEWSPLAN Panel consisted of representatives, often local history librarians, from the nine local authority libraries, as well as from an archive service and an academic library, Michael Brook from Nottingham University and local editor of the *Bibliography of British Newspapers*, a representative from a local newspaper, Steve England from the *Leicester Mercury*, the project officer, Ruth Gordon and the project supervisor, DD. As with all the other regional implementation committees close liaison is maintained with BLNL. Over the years discussion has covered a wide range of issues including free newspapers, extending NEWSPLAN to radio and television broadcasting, and standards for reader printers. Besides

preparing a business plan in 1994 which chronicled progress and identified future priorities, considerable interest was shown in the Mellon Microfilming Project until it was announced in 1994 that funding was not available for newspaper microfilming. Although newspapers were not included in the initial discussions, later it was suggested that they should be, and the NEWSPLAN implementation committees began drawing up lists of priorities. The BL Newspaper Librarian is represented on all panels and he/she generally attends all the meetings, providing the panels with an update on activities in the Newspaper Library, reports on the national NEWSPLAN Council to the committee and takes their views back to them. Since the inauguration of NEWSPLAN 2000 John Lauder, its project director, has attended regularly to report on progress.

Although BLNL was committed in principle to microfilming those titles identified by the various NEWSPLAN reports, it was clear that it did not have the funds to take responsibility for doing so. In 1988 The British Library issued a policy statement outlining,

its substantial interest in promoting the development of microfilming programmes as recommended by the different NEWSPLAN programmes: the encouragement of local initiative and of local microfilming capacity, savings through co-operative projects, more revenue-earning orders to the British Library; the advantages of a more informed selection for its own archival microfilming; increasing awareness of the need, and so on<sup>26</sup>.

Because the British Library could not undertake large scale archival microfilming of newspapers, the individual regions would need to consider how they could assist in funding the project. Eve Johannsen

suggested to the Consultative Group (CGN) in June 1988 that the likely cost of implementation based on 1986 prices would be some £2.25 million and that local libraries, newspapers and private sector sources would be encouraged and expected to provide funding for the shortfall<sup>27</sup>. CGN discussed how local funding could be raised. There had been little interest from the private sector in the South West. 'It was thought that microfilming was not a high profile or attractive activity as far as the newspaper industry was concerned'<sup>28</sup> and this view was supported by Dr Matheson's experience in Scotland. A rather alarming proposal was voiced by some members of the committee who suggested setting up microfilming projects as part of the Manpower Services Programme. In the light of the experiences of indexing projects, discussed in the previous chapter, it is fortunate that this proposal did not proceed.

Optimistic proposals concerning involving major reprographic companies and the newspaper industry also fell on deaf ears. However, John Beard's realistic suggestion that each local authority should try to devote 1% of its book budget to NEWSPLAN was approved and in many cases adopted.

Although circumstances in any individual public library will vary considerably, I believe that it would not be unrealistic to devote 1% of current book fund expenditure to the microfilming of back files of newspapers in order to retain the living history of the past 100 years within the public domain<sup>29</sup>.

In the East Midlands a positive and sympathetic response greeted John Beard's suggestion and initially most authorities in the region were able to allocate 1% of the book fund to newspaper microfilming but this is no

longer possible for a number of them because of changed financial circumstances. However, economic constraints meant that by 1994 Nottinghamshire was a rare example of an authority that was able to microfilm all the titles identified as in need of filming. Leicestershire had to reduce its allocation to 0.6% of its book budget.

## **NEWSPLAN 2000**

In the Spring of 1998 final preparations were being made by John Byford of the British Library and Dr Ann Matheson of the National Library of Scotland for submitting a bid to the Heritage Lottery Fund for a grant of over 16 million pounds to microfilm British local newspapers<sup>30</sup>. The programme was named 'Newspapers in peril' and was the result of careful planning with the regions, the national libraries of Ireland, Scotland and Wales, the newspaper industry and the London Press Club. £5 million was granted which was considerably less than the original sum of £16.3 million that was applied for, but the successful bid was still the largest preservation grant ever awarded in the United Kingdom and should allow microfilming of a total of 1700 pre-1950 local newspaper titles; 33.000 volumes of newspapers and 65 million pages of newsprint. Besides the £5 million granted by the Heritage Lottery Fund, the regional newspaper industry has offered £1.3 million as matched funding support and local newspaper repositories are supporting the project by offering servicing and transport. It should be noted that a substantial portion of the grant was earmarked for provision of 800 microfilm readers and reader printers in libraries.



Following the announcement of the successful bid, a Steering Group was appointed to draft a Memorandum and Articles of Association for the NEWSPLAN Company. The project director, John Lauder, was appointed in 2000. A Technical Advisory Group, of which DD was a member, was appointed to draw up the invitation to tender document for microfilming in accordance with EU Public Procurement Rules and this was finally approved in March 2001. Tenders were invited and in November it was announced that Microformat UK of Rochester had been awarded the contract. The Trustees comprise representatives of the NEWSPLAN regions, National Libraries, the National Preservation Office, the Newspaper Society, the Newspaper Publishers Association (NPA) , the Scottish NPA, and the London Press Club Freedom Forum. The project officer, Simon Kellas, and John Lauder regularly update the implementation committees on the progress of the project, maintain the NEWSPLAN 2000 website and ensure the project receives a high profile. Its aims are clearly outlined:

- To preserve 1,700 local newspaper rare or fragile titles held in libraries and archives, universities and publishers' offices throughout the United Kingdom
- To create archival microfilm to preservation standards
- To provide one copy of each film to the appropriate library without cost
- To store the master negative microfilm created by the Project to archival standards
- To catalogue each newspaper title to national and international standards <sup>31</sup>.

The core aims of the project demonstrate the need to justify the programme in terms of its educational and cultural benefits to a wide audience,

- to preserve a fragile and rapidly disappearing part of the cultural history of the nation
- to save 1,700 local newspaper titles of the United Kingdom from destruction and open them up to new and future generations
- to pioneer a new approach to preservation using the involvement of libraries, the newspaper industry and archival quality preservation microfilming
- to create a partnership approach to a complex cultural preservation programme
- to benefit all sectors of society throughout the UK

The project started in earnest in March 2002 and although there have been some delays in microfilming titles, librarians are now regularly reporting receipt of microfilmed newspapers.<sup>32</sup> One of the useful outcomes is the Project Handbook which is downloadable from the Newsplan 2000 website and offers clear instructions to librarians on all stages of preparing and despatching newspaper files for microfilming and for checking and storing microfilm<sup>33</sup>.

### **Role of the LINC NEWSPLAN panel**

By 1988, BLNL recognised that NEWSPLAN needed a more formal structure involving the regions and the National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation (NCRLC) and proposals were put forward. These indicated,

- (1) there is a need for a national structure and a national plan, supported by the Library Regions, to encourage a continuing commitment to microfilming programmes and to monitor progress on the recommendations of the NEWSPLAN reports.
- (2) implementation committees along the lines of that in the South West, should be set up in all the regions after completion of the NEWSPLAN research, with representation on a National NEWSPLAN committee and forming a national grid of reporting. Full consultation with the existing steering committees was to take place before the proposal was sent to NCRLC <sup>34</sup>.

The functions of a national NEWSPLAN panel were,

- to monitor progress on the recommendations of the NEWSPLAN reports with the object of 100% microfilming of all UK local newspapers, from the earliest dates to the present, that are not yet on microfilm
- to encourage libraries and other organisations to keep up the momentum which has been generated by NEWSPLAN research
- to develop criteria for assessing preservation priorities that are broadly consistent and acceptable nationally
- to assist in the compiling of all the data collected by the NEWSPLAN projects into regional action plans with costings and priorities and develop these plans into a national plan
- to seek to raise additional funds for newspaper microfilming from private sources in future <sup>35</sup>.

These aims were adopted and the LINC NEWSPLAN committee (now the UK and Ireland NEWSPLAN Panel) is intended to monitor progress, support the regional committee's efforts, publicise the need for additional resources and if necessary to seek additional funds from private sources or sponsorship. It is charged with the future promotion of the programme and the development of each region's work into a national plan. It meets regularly twice a year and has been heavily involved in supporting and planning for NEWSPLAN 2000.

The publication of *NEWSPLAN: Guidelines for the microfilming of newspapers*<sup>36</sup> in 1994 (revised 2001) is an excellent example of the way in which constructive and practical assistance was provided for librarians

preparing newspapers for microfilming. It covers all stages of the process from bibliographic description to checking the returned microfilms in accordance with British and International standards.

One of its most tangible achievements has been publishing *NEWSPLAN News* since 1995 which contains a variety of news updates both at national and regional level. It appears irregularly and has usually focussed on a particular region. The complete run can be accessed on excellent NEWSPLAN website<sup>37</sup>. Probably the newsletter's role has been superseded now by this website which is informative and relevant. Other achievements include four highly successful NEWSPLAN conferences in 1990;1994; 1998 and 2002, which discussed current issues and concerns about newspaper preservation and access.

One of the tasks undertaken by local NEWSPLAN implementation committees is to share information on newspaper microfilming in the region. In some cases this information has been included in updates to the original report. In the case of Yorkshire and Humberside it was discovered that a portion of the report was omitted from the original publication as a result of disk malfunction and it was necessary to publish an update including the missing information. A second update was subsequently published<sup>38</sup>. The Irish report was completely revised and a second edition published in 1998<sup>39</sup>.

In the East Midlands progress has been slower. Because it was one of the earliest regions to publish its report, the original report was compiled

on 5¼ floppy disks using WordStar. Although each of the nine counties was supplied with a disk covering their county so that they could update the report, most did not, and in one or two cases they lost the disk. Following repeated requests, most authorities eventually managed to provide files on Word compatible disks and it has been possible to incorporate these into a master file. Some authorities found it easier to scan the original report and provide a Word disk, and thanks to the help of Ed King at the BLNL the pages of the report relating to Leicestershire have now been scanned. Final editing is currently taking place to ensure that all changes are recorded. This is particularly important for the East Midlands region as besides great increases in the numbers of newspapers now available on microfilm, two libraries in the region have suffered serious fires both of which destroyed newspaper files. That in Norwich Central Library in 1994 had a devastating effect on the collection of hard copy files affecting some 400 bound volumes, although the microfilms remained intact despite their boxes being destroyed. This renders most of the information in the original report invalid. Likewise, a fire in Northampton in the Northamptonshire Library store in 1996, caused serious damage to an unspecified number of newspapers and its effects have not been fully quantified yet. The completed entries for each authority are about to go out for final checking. Once the manuscript has been approved by each authority it is envisaged that the region will put the update on the Internet.

A number of other regions have also put updated reports on the Internet. Those from Yorkshire and Humberside, LASER, and the South West are currently available. Unfortunately, the North Western Region's report is no longer available but it is hoped that it will be re-instated in the near future.

Recommendations from the NEWSPLAN panel have suggested that the regions should take a pro-active role in co-ordinating information about newspaper indexing in their regions. Indexing has been more fully covered in Chapter 5 but it is relevant to draw attention to the existence on the Internet of the Yorkshire and Humberside NEWSPLAN's list of newspaper indexes<sup>40</sup>. When it was available, similar information was on the North West NEWSPLAN web site but with the disbanding of the North Western Regional Library Board in 2001 the NEWSPLAN pages were withdrawn and the information is no longer available, although there are plans to reinstate it in the near future.

Some regional committees, including East Midlands and LASER have produced attractive eye catching leaflets advertising the importance of NEWSPLAN that can be distributed to libraries and at professional meetings.

One of the difficulties that has arisen since the original implementation committees were established has been the effects of local government reorganisation throughout the United Kingdom. For instance, in the South West the number of local authorities has doubled since 1996<sup>41</sup>.

In summing up at the NEWSPLAN conference in Durham in 1998 Paul Turner expressed his concern that this could have an adverse effect on funding for newspaper microfilming<sup>42</sup>. The creation of a number of urban unitary authorities in the East Midlands led to Derby, Leicester, Nottingham and Peterborough becoming independent. The new authorities were encouraged to send representatives to the East Midlands NEWSPLAN Panel. As Nottingham is responsible for local studies provision for Nottingham and Nottinghamshire only one representative was needed but Derby and Leicester are both entitled to send a representative. Although only six of the original members of the Yorkshire and Humberside Implementation Committee remained after local government reorganisation, every new authority in the region accepted the invitation to be represented. Elizabeth Melrose provided a succinct account of the role of the committee<sup>43</sup> and its achievements, which include a 'Cumulative update of local newspaper holdings 1990-1995' and an 'Index to local newspapers by place'.

The role of the regional implementation committees was vital in preparing a bid to the Heritage Lottery Fund for funding to microfilm local newspapers. It was their task to identify titles that were at risk in the regions and establish priorities for their microfilming. Because there are a number of cross county newspaper titles in the East Midlands, such as the *Lincoln, Rutland and Stamford Mercury*, it was important that a co-operative regional approach was adopted to avoid duplication or omission.

The NEWSPLAN regional implementation committees now play a pivotal role in ensuring a seamless supply of prepared hard copy files for microfilming. Should further bids for additional funding meet with success, the implementation committees will continue to be at the forefront of identifying and preparing titles for filming and recording changes in their records.

As discussed in Chapter 1, all ten regions have now conducted such surveys of newspaper use<sup>44</sup>. One of the reasons for a second series of user surveys at the end of 2003 was to see if the availability of further titles as a result of NEWSPLAN indicated increases in the use of newspapers. A further suggestion has been that all regions should place their updated reports on the Internet and that from these records a national newspaper database should be created. One of the difficulties with this is the lack of consistency between the different NEWSPLAN reports. Project officers were not asked to create bibliographic records and there is no doubt that the records do not comply with AACR. A suggestion has been that these NEWSPLAN records could be amalgamated with the BLNL catalogue to form a national newspaper database. However, it will require considerable editing if it is to meet an acceptable level of cataloguing to international standards. Further discussion of this appears in Chapter 8.



NEWSPLAN implementation committees are an excellent example of co-operation both within the regions and also between local librarians and the BLNL. It is this degree of co-operation that has made NEWSPLAN the excellent model for co-operation that it is. There can be little doubt that the great success of the NEWSPLAN project in listing files of newspapers throughout the United Kingdom and auditing their physical condition and establishing priorities for preservation, was the reason that the British Library's bid to the Heritage Lottery Fund for funding was ultimately successful.

Few authorities are as assiduous as Devon which produces a monthly Local Studies Newsletter on the Internet and carries regular updates on NEWSPLAN. The issue for August 2002 listed the arrival of microfilms of the *Dawlish Times*; *Ilfracombe Observer*; *Lynton and Lynmouth Recorder*; *Salcombe Times* and *Syle's Barnstaple Herald* as part of NEWSPLAN 2000<sup>45</sup>. Such detailed information is commendable but sadly extremely rare.

Although in Britain the generally accepted view is that microfilming newspapers is essential, with recent surveys among users revealing considerably less opposition to using microfilm than hitherto, as we saw in Chapter 6, a discordant and critical view is held by Nicholson Baker who has voiced concerns about the need to microfilm and disposal of hard copy of newspaper files<sup>46</sup>. Baker controversially suggested that the NEWSPLAN programme should be halted until firm assurances from

libraries receiving funding about their plans to keep the originals were received<sup>47</sup>. The whole question of retention and storage of local newspapers after microfilming has been addressed by the UK and Ireland NEWSPLAN Panel who had indicated concern that libraries often have no facilities to store hard copy files of newspapers and some local authorities had sought to dispose of these. The *Guidelines on the retention and storage of local newspapers and microfilm by libraries*<sup>48</sup> are available on the NEWSPLAN web site and examine storage of negative microfilm referring to the National Preservation Office Guide to Preservation Microfilming and recommending that all master negative microfilm held locally should be registered with the Register of Preservation Microfilms which is now listing newspapers. More at risk are hard copy original newspapers and the guidelines urge local authorities to make adequate provision for collection, storage and preservation of local newspapers. This question will be addressed in more detail in the next chapter. It is hoped that the newly created regional Museum Libraries and Archives Councils in England can be encouraged to support the preservation of newspaper archives and liaise with local NEWSPLAN implementation committees.

NEWSPLAN has been a rare and exemplary success story in terms of the co-operation between local authorities and the British Library and is one which is applauded as a model both in this country and abroad. However, despite its success NEWSPLAN still has some way to go. Not all the reports are available on the Internet and not all regions can

provide an up-to-date picture of the current situation regarding newspaper microfilming in their regions.

NEWSPLAN 2000 only covers newspapers published before 1950 and this means that newspapers which started after that date, such as the *Reading Evening Post* (1965-) are excluded and are at risk.

The main problem will be securing sufficient funds to ensure that microfilming can continue after the current NEWSPLAN 2000 project ends in 2004. One disappointment has been the lack of funding from the newspaper industry. It is quite clear that neither BLNL nor local authorities have sufficient funds to microfilm the titles identified at risk. There is no certainty that a future bid to the Heritage Lottery Fund will be successful.

---

<sup>1</sup> R Wells (1986) *NEWSPLAN: report of the pilot project in the South-West*. London: British Library, viii

<sup>2</sup> Wells (1986), iv.

<sup>3</sup> A Parkes (1991) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in Yorkshire and Humberside. March 1988- June 1989*. London: British Library, 3.

<sup>4</sup> <http://www.bl.uk/collections/nplan.html>

<sup>5</sup> R Cowley (1990) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in the North Western Region September 1986-January 1990*. London: British Library, xv.

<sup>6</sup> Cowley (1990) xvi.

<sup>7</sup> R Gordon (1989) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in the East Midlands April 1987-July 1988*. London: British Library, 2.

<sup>8</sup> M Brook and L Craik (1985) *Newspapers in the East Midlands in 1985: a report to E.M.R.L.S.*, 4. Unpublished.

<sup>9</sup> East Midlands Regional Library System, *Terms of Reference for the Steering Committee*. 1987. Unpublished.

<sup>10</sup> Suggested definition of a newspaper for NEWSPLAN East Midlands 29.7.87 Document agreed at the Meeting of the EMRLS Steering Committee 19 August 1987. Unpublished.

<sup>11</sup> The area covered includes Cleveland, Cumbria, Durham, Northumberland and the Metropolitan Districts of Tyne and Wear.

<sup>12</sup> D Parry (1989) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in the Northern Region October 1987-September 1988*. London: British Library, 8.

<sup>13</sup> Parry (1989) 8.

<sup>14</sup> T Watkins (1990) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in the West Midlands. September 1988-September 19889*. London: British Library, 6-7.

- <sup>15</sup> Watkins (1990), 5-6.
- <sup>16</sup> A Parkes (1991), 4.
- <sup>17</sup> (1988) Minutes of the British Library Consultative Group on Newspapers: CG.88/4, iii.
- <sup>18</sup> R Wells (1989) Feasibility report. Unpublished.
- <sup>19</sup> S Eagle, with the assistance of D. Dixon (1996) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in the London and South Eastern Library Region January 1992- December 1995*. London: British Library, vii.
- <sup>20</sup> S Eagle, (1996), viii.
- <sup>21</sup> S Eagle, (1996), viii.
- <sup>22</sup> NEWSPLAN reports have also been completed for (1998) Ireland 2nd edn, (1994) Wales and (1994) Scotland.
- <sup>23</sup> Now the UK and Ireland NEWSPLAN Panel.
- <sup>24</sup> (1988) NEWSPLAN. Proposal for a national structure and a national plan for implementation Minutes of the British Library Consultative Group on Newspapers CG.88/3.
- <sup>25</sup> Parkes (1989), 45.
- <sup>26</sup> (1988) Minutes of the British Library Consultative Committee on Newspapers CG88/3
- <sup>27</sup> *ibid.*
- <sup>28</sup> *ibid.*
- <sup>29</sup> J Beard (1986) 'Preface', in Wells (1986), ix. See footnote 1.
- <sup>30</sup> (1999) £5 million lottery cash to save newspapers in peril. *NEWSPLAN News* 6, 1-2.
- <sup>31</sup> J Lauder (2002) NEWSPLAN 2000 steams ahead. *NEWSPLAN News* 7, 1.
- <sup>32</sup> (2003) I Maxted reported on the arrival of a number of Devon titles in the *Devon Local History Newsletter* <http://devon.gov.uk/locstudy/list387>
- <sup>33</sup> <http://NEWSPLAN2000.org/project.handbook.html>
- <sup>34</sup> *ibid.*
- <sup>35</sup> *ibid.*
- <sup>36</sup> J McDougall (1994) *NEWSPLAN: Guidelines for the microfilming of newspapers*. Dublin and London: National Library of Ireland and British Library.
- <sup>37</sup> The complete run is available at <http://bl.uk/collections/nplan>
- <sup>38</sup> (1996) *Cumulative update of local newspaper holdings 1990-95*. Wakefield: NEWSPLAN Yorkshire and Humberside.
- <sup>39</sup> (1988) Ireland, 2nd edn.
- <sup>40</sup> History through local newspapers in Yorkshire and the Humber region. <http://yli.org.newsplan/yhindex>
- <sup>41</sup> (1998) South West in the spotlight. *NEWSPLAN News* 5, 1 outlines the changes in detail.
- <sup>42</sup> (1998) NEWSPLAN Millenia and Grids: the digital challenges. Information North
- <sup>43</sup> E Melrose (1997/98) Enthusiasm for Newsplan undimmed. *NEWSPLAN News* 4, 2
- <sup>44</sup> The findings are now available at <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplanregsurvey>
- <sup>45</sup> <http://www.devon.gov.uk/locstudy/list371/>
- <sup>46</sup> N Baker (2001) *Double fold*. New York: Random House.
- <sup>47</sup> N Baker (2001) 'Do we want to keep our newspapers?', in D McKitterick, ed. *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 19-34.
- <sup>48</sup> (2002) Guidelines on the retention and storage of local newspapers and microfilm by libraries. <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/retention>

## **CHAPTER EIGHT**

### **SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS**

This study set out to investigate the ways in which those wishing to consult English provincial newspapers past and present could gain access to them. The research revealed that considerable progress has been made over the past thirty years in improving the quality of bibliographic control of older and current newspapers, in setting standards for bibliographic description, in listing indexing initiatives in local libraries, and in preserving newspapers by surrogacy.

A number of major issues continue to dominate the whole question of newspaper access and preservation. Do published bibliographies reflect the existence and history of all English provincial newspapers, whether or not a copy survives? Are those wishing to find out about the history of periodicals given sufficient information in catalogues and bibliographies? How easy is it to discover what indexes are available? What is the most appropriate medium for surrogacy? Is digitisation a suitable long-term medium for surrogacy? Will digitisation allow improved access to the contents of local newspapers? A fundamental question relates to the form in which a newspaper is retained and made accessible in libraries, if it survives at all. Associated with this is the issue of whether libraries should continue to store hard copy originals after preservation microfilming has occurred. This chapter

considers these issues. It will also examine the contribution of the major players concerned with newspaper access and will consider what future role they might play.

There is no doubt that it is considerably easier to discover what newspapers are available in British libraries: national, academic, public and private, than was the case even twenty-five years ago. Writing in 1987 Michael Harris declared, 'detailed bibliographical analysis of English newspapers is patchy and limited by theme or period'<sup>1</sup>. Since then great advances have been made in recording locations of surviving newspapers throughout the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland and also in preserving them for posterity. Several factors contribute to this success. Publication by the British Library in 1975 of the *Catalogue of the Newspaper Library*, following extensive stock inventories, was a milestone because accurate information about contents of the BLNL's rich holdings of provincial newspapers became much more readily available. Scholars and librarians regarded it as a considerable advance on previous catalogues of newspapers compiled by the British Museum Library. Since 2000, free access to the online catalogue of BLNL has made it much easier for researchers to find out about the holdings of BLNL. Despite the great advantages that many online catalogues offer, especially in flexibility of searching, normally they do not provide detailed bibliographic information, neither do they list newspapers for which no known copy survives, nor British newspapers in overseas collections. For most

English counties, detailed bibliographic information is still not readily available in a single information source and probably even now a handful of newspapers still escape the bibliographic net. Where it exists, the *Bibliography of British newspapers (BBN)* provides the most accurate and comprehensive record of British newspapers past and present, but only a few volumes have been published. It is increasingly difficult to find county editors able to give the necessary time and commitment to the project and without much more active support from CILIP's Information Services Group (ISG) in offering clerical assistance, it is hard to see how the project will advance. It would be helpful if ISG could consider ways of becoming more involved with the project to ensure more volumes are published. Closer liaison with the regional NEWSPLAN implementation committees might also encourage progress and they should be asked to help the General Editor of the *BBN* by identifying potential regional editors. Many members of the NEWSPLAN implementation committees also belong to the CILIP Local Studies Group which also should be approached to explore ways of becoming more closely involved with *BBN*.

In many ways *BBN* has been overshadowed by NEWSPLAN resulting in it being relegated to low priority within the British Library. The BL's policy of publishing counties in pairs has demotivated county editors because in some cases adjacent counties have no editor. Despite being almost finished in 1990, Leicestershire has never been

completed because of a requirement to partner it with Northamptonshire on which work has never started. *BBN*'s dependence on the efforts of one person to act as co-coordinator and editor has been to its detriment. There might be more of a sense of corporate responsibility to move things forward if management of *BBN* was placed under the auspices of an editorial board, including representatives from ISG and from regional NEWSPLAN committees.

The appointment of the new editor, and Ed King's willingness to discuss the way forward with her, is encouraging and may lead to some progress, but it is probably unrealistic to be too optimistic. Without more assistance, it is difficult to predict a bright future and there is a strong possibility that *BBN* will founder. Despite this gloomy prognostication, it should not be forgotten that the eight published volumes are the most informative and complete listings for the counties they cover. It should always be remembered that no bibliography is ever completely up-to-date or accurate and the recent discoveries of previously unrecorded newspapers in Yorkshire, Huntingdon and Devon mean that it is highly likely there are still unknown newspaper titles waiting to be found. Nonetheless, it is now possible to trace and locate almost all known English provincial newspapers published since the start of the eighteenth century, using a combination of the BLNL catalogue, the NEWSPLAN reports and other published bibliographies.



Theoretically, bibliographic control of current local newspapers should be straightforward as all titles should be deposited at the BLNL Copyright Receipt Office and then appear in the BLNL Catalogue. The first issue of a new title is recorded in *BNB*, as well as being listed in monthly issues of *BRAD*. The problem is that not all titles are deposited. The other English copyright libraries do not normally claim local newspapers apart from those for their immediate locality. Constant vigilance is required to detect new titles, cessations and title changes, especially of free newspapers. The acquisitions staff in the Copyright Receipt Office at BLNL needs to consult the monthly issues of *BRAD* to identify new and ceased titles to ensure that they receive all titles to which they are entitled.

An issue that has troubled librarians for some years is what they should do with free newspapers. Free newspapers often fall outside established subscription arrangements and are frequently obtained on an informal basis. Although local library authorities readily accept their responsibility to collect and retain copies of paid-for newspapers circulating in their area, their attitude to free papers is often ambivalent. Faced with the need to clarify its acquisition policies, because of increasing pressure on its storage capacity, BLNL turned its attention to free newspapers. Two surveys were commissioned in 1991 and 1998 to investigate their contents and the library's holdings of them, in order to determine whether or not the library could justify acquiring material with perceived low information content. BLNL

holds considerably more local free weekly newspapers than information from regional NEWSPLAN committees indicated. However, despite legal deposit requirements, perhaps 25% of free titles are still not being collected by the BLNL and the situation is often little better at local level. In some cases, such as in Leicester, the library has decided not to collect them at all, whereas in other places local studies librarians rely on staff to bring in copies from home.

There has been considerable debate in the British Library about continuing to archive newspapers that primarily consist of advertising. Research in 1998 showed that most newspapers should not be discounted as useless, even if their news content is very low and that most of the free newspapers in the British Isles contain sufficient unique local information to justify their retention for posterity. Because NEWSPLAN implementation committees meet regularly, they are the best means of contact with the BLNL as local studies librarians are most likely to know about free newspapers in their area. Eagle recommended that NEWSPLAN implementation committees should carry out local surveys and annual reviews of newspapers in their regions to ensure that titles are not missed. There is no reason to change these recommendations.

Libraries sometimes overlook local newspapers produced by cultural minorities. In many ways they present the same problems as free newspapers, in that many are informally produced, and their publishers

do not always comply with legal deposit. The difficulty is sometimes compounded by the fact that they fall outside the remit of local studies librarians who are well used to handling newspapers but they are the responsibility of ethnic services librarians who may be less conversant with the problems of their cataloguing, preservation and retention. It is important that local library authorities establish policies to ensure that these newspapers receive the same treatment as other newspapers in the collection, otherwise future generations may be deprived of a valuable insight into cultural history.

Variant editions of local daily newspapers can cause problems when considering which one to microfilm and to retain as an archival copy. Many newspapers are issued in series with minimal changes between the different editions, except for one or two local pages. Sometimes a publisher may produce up to ten editions a day with variant local pages, so that there is a city edition as well as editions for surrounding areas. Since a high proportion of the content of these newspapers is advertising, it seems sensible to examine ways of ensuring that besides retaining a master copy, the variant pages are archived and microfilmed. Although users might appreciate consulting the local edition as a whole, it is unrealistic to expect that every local edition is filmed and retained in its entirety on the grounds of cost, both for filming and storage.

The *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers* are

intended for identifying newspaper titles and recording holdings in libraries. However, there is a long way to go before the provincial press of Britain has its history appropriately recorded in bibliographies. Press historians need additional bibliographic information on the publishing history of each newspaper, especially details about publishers, printers and agents. Rosemary Wells's optimistic suggestion that local history societies and students should be encouraged to supply historical information on newspapers is both unrealistic and inappropriate as it would be impossible to monitor the quality of the information provided<sup>2</sup>. Newspaper publishing history, especially in the eighteenth century, is extremely complex, and to record it accurately requires considerable skill and attention to detail. The time is ripe for changing the terms of reference for county editors of *BBN* to include information on publishers, place of publication and possibly agents. The new General Editor should view this as high priority. Although it is a highly complex document, much of which is not relevant for the bibliographic description of newspapers, John Palmer's manual deserves serious consideration and possible revival by the Research Society for Victorian Periodicals to make its findings more widely available<sup>3</sup>. The General Editor of *BBN* has prepared some simplified guidelines for implementation in all future volumes to alert county editors to the major pitfalls in describing newspapers. These can be seen in Appendix 12.

There is no doubt that users of newspapers appreciate indexes and that they tend to encourage greater use of newspapers. Surveys by the

BLNL in the late 1980s showed that a considerable number of indexing initiatives took place in local libraries. Over 1,000 separate indexes were in existence for the whole United Kingdom and Northern Ireland. Unfortunately, although a database of indexing activity was established at BLNL, it is for internal use and it has not been updated on a regular basis. As a result it is difficult to discover the full extent of local newspaper indexing in England. For this reason DD conducted a survey on newspaper indexing in English public libraries. It revealed that newspaper indexing is not easy to categorise because the indexes were so varied in their coverage. Some libraries indexed newspapers along with other material as part of a general local studies index; others indexed specific newspapers; some compiled biographical indexes; some relied on the electronic current newspapers as the basis for their indexes, and many were unable to index newspapers at all. A number of librarians questioned the value of newspaper indexes and others appreciated their value but were unable to spare the resources to index their newspapers. The quality of the indexes varied considerably: some were highly professional but others were compiled by volunteers with insufficient training, resulting in poorly compiled indexes. Many only covered a few years of a newspaper whereas others date back to the nineteenth century.

Public access to indexes is by no means guaranteed. It is hoped that the BLNL will make the information compiled by DD available on its web site and will endeavour to keep it up to date. Libraries are not the

only compilers of newspaper indexes: there are many examples of independent indexing initiatives by dedicated individuals or classes of volunteers. Some of these are ongoing and they need to be incorporated into any database of newspaper indexes. Regular information is needed and local librarians need to inform the BLNL not only of their own endeavours but also of any projects in the area.

NEWSPLAN implementation committees are now being urged to consider the problem of making the contents of the newspapers more accessible. They are being asked to examine digitised indexing, especially of current newspapers and also to make information on existing newspaper indexes more widely available. Each NEWSPLAN region could actively publicise the existence of local newspaper indexes. The commendable example of the Yorkshire and Humberside NEWSPLAN Implementation Committee in listing newspaper indexes should be a model for other regions to work towards producing similar information on their web sites. It would be even more useful if the indexes themselves could be digitised and mounted on the web. The Internet is an appropriate medium for making newspaper indexes accessible and there are examples of this.

The format in which a newspaper is available is of fundamental importance to those wishing to use it. An original newspaper from the eighteenth century is very different in appearance from its twenty-first century successor. Using older newspapers in fine condition is a

delightful experience which cannot be easily replaced by a surrogate. The flavour of the whole newspaper is experienced through the feel of the paper, the details of small motifs in the text and the typography. The entire page can be seen as a whole, whereas reading microfilmed pages requires manipulating the image round the screen. Digitised versions often only reproduce the article requested rather than the whole page. It is hard to deny that given the choice of browsing through a hard copy volume or perusing a microfilm, using an original file is preferable, provided it is in good condition.

Despite initial reluctance to use microfilm by many users, most are now becoming reconciled to using microfilmed newspapers. The most recent survey from Devon shows that a higher percentage of users now prefer using microfilm to hard copy<sup>4</sup>. However, this acceptance is probably tempered with a degree of realism, in that the newspaper they wish to consult is no longer accessible in hard copy. Of course, there are problems: microfilm is not easy to browse, illustrations in colour are lost, and if the original newsprint is blurred, the microfilm reflects this. Half tone photographs do not reproduce well on microfilm and quality is generally poor. Creased pages will microfilm badly and the user can never be sure that filming faithfully reproduces the entire newspaper. It is easy for pages to be omitted and there are many examples where special supplements have not been filmed. The only way that a user can be absolutely certain that the full text is there is to consult an original. Although microfilms produced on silver-halide film are of good

quality there are numerous instances of poor quality older film, some of which is incomplete.

It cannot be denied that microfilm is an unattractive medium necessitating the use of inconvenient mechanical microfilm readers, for which advance booking may need to be made. Many of the problems stem not from the films, but from the equipment used to read them and from microfilms being badly wound, scratched, or damaged, or incorrectly boxed.

Despite the vociferous outcry against microfilmed newspapers by Nicholson Baker, for the predictable future, microfilm will be the format that most readers use. By using examples of near perfect hard copy, Baker advanced the view that many originals were worthy of preservation and that paper restoration would ensure many hard copy newspapers could continue to be available. Most of his examples were eighteenth and early nineteenth century newspapers on reasonable paper. He refused to believe in proven chemical deterioration of late nineteenth and twentieth century newspapers. He also failed to recognise that many of the provincial newspapers in English libraries, museums and newspaper offices are in such a parlous state that there is no question of anyone being able to read them. A large number of local newspapers up to the late twentieth century were broadsheets, and were bound into unwieldy large volumes. Moreover, many of the bindings are sufficiently damaged that it is impossible to remove them



from the shelves without them disintegrating. DD has frequently been surrounded by a sea of paper fragments and dust from newspaper bindings not only in local libraries but also in BLNL.

Much of the thrust of Baker's argument was directed against libraries destroying originals, many of which were unique, after microfilming. To this end he suggested that the NEWSPLAN microfilming programme should be halted immediately, to build in a proviso that libraries receiving funding for microfilming should be required to make arrangements to keep the originals. It is difficult to take this suggestion seriously as, without NEWSPLAN continuing at its present rate, many newspapers simply will not survive in a readable form. It should be remembered that his criticism of BLNL policy related to its policy of disposing of foreign newspapers, not British ones. BLNL has firmly reiterated its policy of retaining all British newspapers after microfilming.

There has been considerable debate about the responsibility of libraries in the regions to retain hard copy after microfilming and the British Library has taken the lead by compiling *Guidelines for the storage and retention of newspapers* which are intended to ensure that, wherever possible, archival files of originals are stored in appropriate conditions. This does not necessarily mean that users will be allowed access to originals once a microfilm has been made. Indeed, already concern is being voiced by some local studies librarians that they are

being required to sign a declaration stating that no public access to the original will be allowed after filming. Some local authorities may take the view that once a master microfilm negative has been stored in an appropriate repository, they should no longer bear the costs of storing cumbersome files of newspapers. Storage is expensive and if newspaper originals are to survive they must be stored in environmentally suitable accommodation that complies with British national standards. They should not be put in unsuitable storage conditions that will accelerate the deterioration of the originals. The reality is very different and there are numerous examples in libraries of unusable files in advanced states of disintegration. It has to be accepted that not all files justify shelf space and that hard decisions will have to be made about what can be kept. Regional NEWSPLAN implementation committees need to be more proactive in exploring cooperative storage facilities for original newspapers. Possibilities might include storage in local museums or record offices and it is recommended that libraries should work closely with the newly established regional Museums, Libraries and Archives Councils. Although at present, the British Library has no funds for additional storage at Boston Spa, if a repository for newspapers is constructed there, perhaps it could offer storage facilities for provincial newspapers from local authorities as well.

Pressure on storage space may still prompt owners of newspapers to consign them to destruction without consultation. The example in the

1970s of Middlesbrough Library selling all its originals to a private collector should be a timely warning. Access to many unique original newspapers was lost, as the private collector refuses to allow anyone to use them, and the quality of the microfilm is barely legible. There is always a risk that disasters such as floods and fires will damage newspapers and it is important that they are included in library disaster plans to minimise the risk of irreparable damage.

Nonetheless, conservation experts generally agree that if originals are not used, their lifespan can be prolonged considerably. Despite the consternation caused by Baker, he has done users of newspapers a service by bringing the whole question of newspaper storage and retention into open debate. By putting the world's major libraries on the defensive, he stimulated them to review their policies on retention and storage of original files. It is accepted that master microfilm negatives should always be housed in secure and environmentally suitable accommodation that complies with national standards.

The success of the recent attempts to digitise newspapers from preservation microfilm demonstrates that user friendly searching is no longer out of the question. A number of impressive presentations were given at the 4th NEWSPLAN conference in 2002, especially from Olive Software and Helsinki University Library. The British Library is looking for partnerships to advance its programme of newspaper digitisation. An ambitious bid to JISC has been drawn up to cover selected titles

from a wide range of national and provincial newspapers from throughout the UK from 1800-1900. The success of the existing Historic Newspapers Project, covering selected years of four newspapers, including the *Manchester Guardian*, and of the 'Collect Britain' project, funded by the New Opportunities Fund (NOF), including the entire *Penny Illustrated Paper* (1861-1913), shows what can be achieved. After an initial slow start, digitisation of the Burney Collection of early English newspapers has begun, and the BL has now set up a Newspaper Digitisation Programme Board. Extracts from newspapers are appearing elsewhere in projects, such as 'Moving here' which contains substantial extracts from some provincial newspapers<sup>5</sup>. However, it is clear that for the foreseeable future only the most readable and popular texts will be candidates for digitisation.

For the time being because of costs, such activity is probably better suited to small files or press cuttings. The stumbling block is not the technology but the cost and long-term accessibility. However, without commercial backing it seems unlikely that libraries will have the funds to do little more than pilot projects of short runs. The example of a project in Norfolk to digitise the press cuttings collection of Eastern Counties Newspapers from 1922-94 is a reminder that digitisation is not cheap and requires technical expertise. Technological advances have overcome many of the initial problems caused by poor quality print and the complexity of the layout of newspaper pages. However, the user should be aware that even in sophisticated packages, text

may be corrupted and efficient retrieval may be jeopardised. The quality of text printed out from PDF files remains poor, and considerably worse than text printed out using good quality microfilm from a good reader printer.

One of the priorities identified by the NEWSPLAN 2000 project was to investigate the feasibility of automatic indexing of provincial newspapers. However, this too requires external funding to make it viable. It is likely that much of the effort will be directed towards encouraging local newspaper proprietors to work in partnership with librarians and archivists if digitised versions of their newspapers are to be made available in libraries. It is not possible to discount the thorny issue of copyright in this context. The likelihood of newspaper publishers allowing libraries access to files of newspapers without licences is remote and it would seem that out of copyright titles are the ones most suited to digitisation. Copyright restrictions will prevent much twentieth century material being digitised. Most library authorities play safe using 1900 as a cut-off date to ensure that copyright is not infringed and, while this is inevitable, it does mean that users will be denied access to a substantial amount of information in twentieth century newspapers.

Debates about whether digitisation will replace microfilm as a preservation medium have been voiced over the past decade. However, newspapers are generally digitised from preservation

microfilm and for the time being, microfilming remains the recommended preservation medium. Silver halide microfilm produced after 1970s has a recognised longevity, provided it has been properly processed and stored in a suitable environment, but there is still no firm evidence for the archival longevity of digitised material and long-term survival is unproven at present. Its loss is guaranteed unless it is actively manipulated. Digitised files need to be archived and continuous effort may be necessary to preserve the digital files and to ensure long term access to them for which there are cost implications. Technological advances may change this and ensure digital material competes with microform as a preservation medium, but until this is proved beyond reasonable doubt, it would be inadvisable not to preserve newspapers on microfilm and store master negatives to internationally agreed standards. By creating a preservation microfilm, libraries have the option of digital formatting later, as the resources allow. At the same time they still have the preserved contents of a newspaper in an archival format. It is important to remember that surrogacy only preserves the content not the original. Digitised projects are considered important in current political thinking. They make more resources available, increase the number of users and create a higher profile for the medium itself. It is perhaps unrealistic to assume that this will lead to funding, but it will provide a useful negotiating tool.

There is no doubt that BLNL has played a leading role in improving access to English provincial newspapers. It should not be forgotten that

the strengths of its collections are the result of sustained collection building within its predecessor, the British Museum Library. Had the library not recognised the need to provide separate purpose built accommodation for newspapers in the early twentieth century, and catalogued the collections, the UK would not have the largest newspaper library in the world.

The appointment of professional staff to BLNL marked a change both in the way in which the library and its contents were publicised and in how initiatives relating to newspapers were coordinated. The *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* was a valuable source of information on issues of concern about newspapers. Many readers were disappointed when it was suspended in 2001 and it is greatly hoped that it will be revived in the future. One of the finest achievements of BLNL in recent years has been the mounting of its excellent web site. This is very informative about the collections and services offered by the library. Its success can be measured by that fact it attracts so many users.

It will be interesting to see what the reaction in the media will be if, as has been suggested by Ed King, the reading rooms at Colindale are closed and a new reading room dedicated to newspapers and their readers is made available at St Pancras in 2007, along with new accommodation for the storage of original newspaper files at Boston Spa. It is hard to argue for a case for newspapers occupying storage space in London,

when they could be housed more economically outside the capital. There is no doubt that a central London location for reading newspapers would be more convenient to many of BLNL's readers. It must be remembered that many readers are still using originals at Colindale and the NEWSPLAN 2000 project only microfilmed a proportion of those at risk. To avoid damage to originals, readers would have to consult them at Boston Spa or not at all. Also, once newspapers are removed from their own premises, the separate sense of identity enjoyed by the newspapers may be lost. The demise of the Consultative Group on Newspapers is a further indication of the loss of the special status of newspapers within the BL.

As Head of the BLNL in the 1980s, Stephen Green's enthusiasm was important in moving towards the start of the NEWSPLAN project. Completion of all ten NEWSPLAN reports was possible because of the support that regional library systems received from successive BLNL librarians. NEWSPLAN marked a remarkable degree of cooperation and partnership between local librarians and the BL and has led to good working relationships between the two. The fact that the Head of BLNL attends all the regional NEWSPLAN meetings demonstrates BLNL's commitment to inform and interact with all the regions. The highly successful NEWSPLAN 2000 project which involves libraries in the regions, and has attracted funding from the newspaper industry and substantial funds from the Heritage Lottery Fund, is an excellent model of cooperation.



However, pride in the achievements of NEWSPLAN should not allow complacency. The original bid for funding was considerably more ambitious and the five million pounds granted fell far short of the seventeen million pounds requested. It is easy to overlook the fact that the NEWSPLAN 2000 project did not include newspapers published after 1950 and that therefore many of these newspapers are deteriorating rapidly without hope of preservation. It is hoped that they will be included in future requests for funding for microfilming. This also includes newspapers produced by cultural minorities which may not be collected at all by libraries and are unlikely to be microfilmed.

One of the most positive aspects of the NEWSPLAN project is the intention by the UK and Ireland NEWSPLAN Panel to set up a national newspaper database. This is envisaged as an amalgamation of records from the regional NEWSPLAN reports and the BLNL catalogue. A considerable amount of work needs to be done, as not all the regional NEWSPLAN committees have mounted their updated reports on the Internet and until they do so progress will be impeded. Most regions are now actively considering the way forward on this.

While the existence and physical state of thousands of provincial newspapers has been recorded, there is a lack of overall consistency in the way which individual newspapers are described in different NEWSPLAN regional volumes. This lack of consistency in description

and arrangement between volumes arose from the fact that the BLNL gave responsibility for the shape of individual reports to the regional committees, preferring to support rather than direct. If such a database comes into being, it is essential that BLNL takes a leading role in ensuring greater consistency. Funds should be allocated to ensure the database is professionally edited, allowing users access by title and place. Unless this happens there is a real danger that it will be flawed from the start because of the inconsistencies between the regional volumes. Pressure to meet targets by placing material on the Internet too quickly will lead to a profusion of inaccuracies that will do BLNL and NEWSPLAN no favours. It would be helpful if the entries from *BBN* could be incorporated, perhaps incorporating material from the unpublished files. Modern scanning techniques should enable the existing published volumes to be entered electronically and there is already the commendable example of Ian Maxted's list of Devon newspapers on the Internet<sup>6</sup>. A national newspaper database would enable researchers to locate provincial newspapers with information about their physical format.

While the achievements of the BLNL and NEWSPLAN have dominated access and preservation of English provincial newspapers over the past thirty years, users of newspapers have cause to be grateful to many other organisations as well. The role of the Reference, Special and Information Section (RSIS) of the Library Association was also important. Some local branches, such as North Western, compiled and

published lists of newspapers. The intellectual responsibility for *BBN* remains with the Information Services Group, successor to RSIS. However, much is owed to Charles Toase, General Editor of *BBN* and the band of county editors of the project. Similarly, the individual project officers of the NEWSPLAN regions deserve mention. NEWSPLAN owes its success not only to encouragement and leadership from BLNL but to the work of members of its ten regional implementation committees and the efforts of the local studies librarians who are responsible for newspapers. The parent UK and Ireland NEWSPLAN Panel is increasingly influential in considering issues relating to newspaper preservation and access.

The contribution of local libraries over the years has been extremely important in ensuring that files of newspapers have survived as well as they have because of local studies librarians' commitment to cataloguing and publicising their collections. Despite the great efforts of members of the Local Studies Group in improving access to local newspapers, it is strange that this Group does not take a more proactive role in projects such as *BBN*.

Many major academic libraries have files of newspapers, and while few have done as much as the Bodleian Library in cataloguing early newspapers, many contain sufficient collections of microfilms to enable researchers to consult local newspapers. From the nineteenth century onwards, significant contributions have been made by dedicated

individuals in compiling and publishing bibliographies and newspaper indexes. Even where the results are less than perfect, they can be used as the starting point for modern researchers. Several indexers and bibliographers have made their work freely available on the Internet. Ian Maxted in Devon is an excellent example as his regular online *Local Studies Newsletter* contains frequent references to newspaper research and bibliography.

Newspaper publishers may still hold original files of newspapers. It is difficult to generalise but some have been exemplary in depositing files in libraries, whereas others see no need to share their resources. One of the difficulties faced by NEWSPLAN 2000 has been persuading newspaper publishers to provide funding and unless they can be persuaded to be more generous, future bids for funds may encounter difficulties.

Following the first and highly successful IFLA Symposium on Newspaper Preservation and Access in 1987, librarians concerned with newspapers from a large number of countries have met regularly and achieved much to advance preservation and bibliographical initiatives internationally. The IFLA Section for Newspapers has produced guidelines on microfilming, cataloguing and preservation and is about to begin work on a manual of newspaper management. It meets regularly and provides a forum for the world's leading newspaper librarians to discuss common problems and to work on producing

guidelines and standards.

Since the 1987 IFLA symposium much has been achieved. Information about newspapers and their location is much more readily available to those wishing to use them. The combination of the BLNL OPAC and the updated NEWSPLAN reports, means that researchers are more likely than ever before to trace most, if not all, newspapers published in a locality. NEWSPLAN 2000 ensures preservation of the contents of the pre-1950 titles most at risk of deterioration, making them accessible. There is a price to be paid, in that fewer originals will be made available for use and some information will be lost. There are still many thousands of volumes of newspapers in need of preservation microfilming and it is to be hoped that a future bid for preservation microfilming of newspapers at risk will be met sympathetically.

---

<sup>1</sup> M Harris (1988) 'The history and bibliography of English newspapers', in IP Gibb *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12<sup>th</sup>-15<sup>th</sup> 1987*. London and Paris: K G Saur.

<sup>2</sup> R Wells (1986) *NEWSPLAN: report of the pilot project in the south-west*. London: British Library, 22

<sup>3</sup> J Palmer, (1980) Manual for the bibliographical description of serials. Presented at the annual conference of the Research Society for Victorian Periodicals Philadelphia 24-25 October 1980. Unpublished.

<sup>4</sup> I Maxted (2003) *Devon local studies newsletter*. December.  
<http://devon.gov.uk/library/locstudy/list387>

<sup>5</sup> The NOF 'Moving Here' project is led by the National Archives and includes a number of extracts from newspapers, including the whole of the *Manchester Guardian* for 1887.

<sup>6</sup> I Maxted (2003) Devon newspapers. *Devon local studies newsletter*. August.  
<http://devon.gov.uk/library/locstudy/list383>

### Select Bibliography

(1982) 1932-1982: 50 years of service to readers and the public. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (5), 1-4.

Adair, S. (1999) *Information sources for the press and broadcast media*. München: Bowker Saur.

Adams, C., Hayes, M. and McCann, T. (1998) *Local history mini-guide to sources. No. 8: Newspapers in West Sussex*. Chichester: West Sussex County Council.

(1921-22) Additions and corrigenda: *Times tercentenary handlist of newspapers. Notes and Queries* ns. 12, VIII, 13, 91-93, 173-77, 252, 476; X, 191, 213, 261-64.

Alexander, M. (1998) 'Digitising the Burney collection', in Wressell, P. and associates, (1998) *NEWSPLAN, Millennia and grids: the digital challenges*. Newcastle: Information North, 59-62. <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplanconf>

Allnutt, W.H. (1895) The first English provincial newspaper. *Bibliographica* 2 (7), 294-97.

Anderson, H. and McIntyre, J.E. (1985) *Planning manual for disaster control in Scottish libraries and record offices*. Edinburgh: National Library of Scotland.

Anderson, J. (1983) 'The Newspaper Library', in *The British Library*. London: British Library, 38-41.

Anderson, M.A. (1985) Micrographics plus computerization in Natrona County, Wyoming. *Journal of Information Image Management* 18 (June), 33-37.

Arlitsch, K., Yapp, L. and Edge, K. (2003) The Utah digital libraries project. *D-Lib Magazine* 9 (3) 1-11. <http://dlib.rgmark03/arlitisch>

Armstrong, T.F. and Fennell, J.C. (1982) Historical and genealogical goldmine: an index project for a small town newspaper. *RQ* 22(2), 140-45.

(1996/7) Automation of the Newspaper Library catalogue. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (22), 4.

Baird, P. (1987) The *Glasgow Herald* index project. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 3 & 15-16.

Baker, J. P. and Soroka, M. C. (1978) *Library conservation: preservation in perspective*. Stroudsburg, PA: Dowden, Hutchinson and Ross.

Baker, N. (2000) Deadline: the author's desperate bid to save America's past. *New Yorker* 24 July, 46-61. 'Talking points' in response to this article is available at <http://arl.org/presrv/baker1/hml>

Baker, N. (2002) 'Do we want to keep our newspapers?', in McKitterick, D. ed (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 19-34.

Baker, N. (2001) *Double fold: libraries and the assault on paper*. New York: Random House.

Banik, G. (1988) 'Problems of mass conservation of newsprint in libraries', in Gibb, I.P., ed. *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K.G. Saur, 216-22.

Banks, P. N. (1978) *Preservation of library materials*. Chicago, IL: Newberry Library.

Barnard, R., ed. (1998) *The Meadley index to the Hull Times*. 2 vols. Hull: Hull College Local History Unit with Hull City Council.

Baylen, J. O. (1998/9) Some recollections of the British Library Newspaper Library since the 1950s. *Newspaper Library News* (25), 3-4.

Beare, G. (1999) *Indexing newspapers and periodicals*. Sheffield: Society of Indexers.

Beare, G. (1987) Indexing: the user's point of view. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 8.

Beare, G. (1989) Local newspaper indexing projects and products. *The Indexer* 16 (4), 232.

Beare, G. (1989) Pressing for press. *The Indexer* 16 (3), 145-46..

Bebbington, D. (2002) Bringing the news home. *Scottish Libraries* 17 (2), 17.

Bennett, J. (1984) The Scotsman index project. *Locscot* 1 (7), 127-29, 34.

Bennett, J. (1987) The Scotsman indexing project. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8) (June), 7-8.

Bennett, J. (1984) Teamwork indexing of the Scotsman. *The Indexer* 14 (1), 27-29.

Bennett, S. (1978) 'The bibliographic control of Victorian periodicals', in Vann J. D. and VanArsdel, R., eds, *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. New York: Modern Language Association, 22-51.

Bergess, W.F., Riddell, R.M. and Whyman, J. (1982) *Bibliography of British newspapers: Kent*. London: British Library.

Berry, S. (1979) The arrangement of newscuttings in a local studies collection. Loughborough University: BA Final year project.

Black, J. (1989) A British perspective on the microfilming of newspapers. *Microform Review* 18 (1), 41-42.



Black, J. (1988) 'The development of the press', in Gibb, I.P. ed. (1988) *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K.G. Saur, 45-59.

Bluhm, R.K. (1975) *Bibliography of British newspapers: Wiltshire*. London: Library Association Reference Special and Information Section.

Bodleian Library (1878-8) *Catalogue of newspapers in the Nichols collection of the Bodleian Library*. 2 vols. Oxford: Bodleian Library.

Bohrman, H. (1988) 'The history and bibliography of the press', in Gibb, I.P. ed. (1988) *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K.G. Saur, 23-33.

Bohrman, H. (1989) 'The importance of microfilm in the collection, preservation and use of newspapers with special reference to the production and acquisition of microfilm', in *Mikrofilm Arkiv: der deutschsprachigen Presse*. 8<sup>th</sup> edn. Dortmund: Mikrofilm Archiv, 1-9.

Booth, P. F. (2001) *Indexing: the manual of good practice*. München: K.G. Saur.

Boston, G. (1994) New technology- friend or foe? *IFLA Journal* 20, 335.

Bowers, F. (1949) *Principles of bibliographical description*. New York: Russell and Russell.

Bowers, F. (1971) Four faces of bibliography. *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada* 10, 33-45.

Braid, A. (1995) 'Digitisation: libraries without walls for books without pages', in Woodward, H. and Morley, M. eds. *Endangered species: evolving strategies for library collection management*. Witney: United Kingdom Serials Group and National Acquisitions Group.

Brayer, H.O. (1946) Preliminary guide to indexed newspapers in the United States 1650-1900. *Mississippi Valley Historical Review* 33, 237-58.

Bremer-Laamanen, M. & Kervinen, J. (2002) 'A Nordic digital library', in *Global issues in 21<sup>st</sup> century librarianship*. Helsinki: NORDINFO publikation 48.

Bremer-Laamanen, M. (2002) Tiden: a Nordic digital library. Paper presented at the 4<sup>th</sup> Newsplan conference, London April 9th.  
<http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan>

(1995/6) Britain's oldest newspaper. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (20), 6.

British Library Newspaper Library (1975) *Catalogue of the newspaper library*. 8 vols. London: British Library Board.  
<http://bl.uk/collections/newspaper/services>



British Library (2002) *Guidelines on the storage and retention of local newspapers and microfilms*. <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplanretention.html>

British Library (1977) *The newspaper collections and the future*. London: British Library.

British Library (1979) *The plan for the newspaper collections*. London: British Library.

British Library (1983) *Working party on access to newspapers: synopsis of recommendations*. London: British Library.

(2000) British Library Newspaper Library services and collections: January to June 2000. *Newspaper Library News* (28), 14-15.

(1996-97) The British Museum and newspaper storage. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (22), 8.

(1981) British newspaper indexes - pilot survey. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (2), 1.

British Standards Institution (2000) *Recommendations for the storage and exhibition of archival documents*. (BS 5424:2000). London: British Standards Institution.

British Standards Institution (1992) *Recommendations for the processing and storage of silver gelatin-type microfilm*. (BS 1153:1992). London: British Standards Institution.

British Standards Institution (2003) *Repair and allied processes for the conservation of documents: recommendations*. (BS 4971:2003) London: British Standards Institution.

Britzolakis, S. (2000) Mapping newspaper and periodical sources relating to black and Asian communities in Britain. *Newspaper Library News* (28), 6-9.

Broadhurst, A. (1993) The digitization of library material. *Library and Information Briefings* 39, 1-10.

Brook, M. (1987) *Bibliography of British Newspapers: Nottinghamshire*. London: British Library.

Brook, M. and Craik, L. (1985) *Newspapers in the East Midlands in 1985: a report to EMRLS*. Unpublished.

Bruer, J.M. (1998) Digital imaging and a balanced preservation program. *Microform and Imaging Review* 27, 13-20.

Budd, J., ed. (2002) *Managing the preservation of periodicals and newspapers*. München: K.G. Saur. (IFLA Publications 103)

Bukovsky, V. (1999) Is deacidification a stop to the rescue of historic newspapers? *Restaurator* 20 (2), 77-96.

Burrows, S. and Gaudet, F. (1986) *The checklist of indexes of Canadian newspapers*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada.

Burrows, S. (2003) 'Mesplet to metadata: Canadian newspaper preservation and access', in Walravens, H. and King, E. *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur, 188-200.

Butler, C. E., Clements, D. W.G. and Millington, G. A. (1989) 'Paper strengthening at the British Library: recent developments', in *Preservation and technology: proceedings of a seminar at York University, 20-21 July 1988*. London: British Library National Preservation Office, 65-74.

Byron, J. F.W. (1987) Topographical indexing. *The Indexer* 15 (4), 211-14.

Byford, J. (1998) 'Newsplan's one per cent of the first Millennium', in Wressell, P. and associates, (1998) *NEWSPLAN, Millennia and grids: the digital challenges*. Newcastle: Information North, 3-10.  
<http://bl.uk/linc/concord/newsplan.conf>

Cameron, S.H.H. (1996) *Index to Scottish Gaelic periodicals*. Willingham: author.

Carpenter, L., Shaw, S. and Prescott, A., eds (1998) *Towards the digital library: the British Library's Initiatives for Access Programme*. London: British Library.

Carter, R.C. (1986) The United States Newspaper Program: cataloging aspects. *Cataloging and Classification Quarterly* 6, whole issue.

Catt, J. (1985) Sources for local newspaper history. *Local Historian* 16, 479-82.

Chandler, J. (1983) Indexes for family and local history: a user's view. *The Indexer* 13 (4), 223-27.

Chapman, C.R. (1993) *Using newspapers and periodicals*. Birmingham: Federation of Family History Societies.

Chapman, P. (2001) Change and the changing face of a regional newspaper library 1990-2000. *Aslib Proceedings* 53 (2), 55-57.

Chapman, P. and Kenna, S. (1988) Substitution microforms: a survey of the policies and practices in United Kingdom Libraries. *Library Association Record* 90 (5), 282-85.

Chapman, S. et al, eds (1999) *Digital imagery and preservation microfilm: the future of the hybrid approach for the preservation of brittle books*. Washington, DC: Council on Preservation and Access.  
<http://clir.org/programs/cpa.hybridintro.html>

Cherry, S.S. (1979) Yesterday's news for tomorrow: a special update on news indexes, indexing and indexers. *American Libraries* 10 November, 590.



Christie, P. (1986) Indexing 19th century Devon newspapers. *The Indexer* 15 (2), 3-6.

Clements, G. (1991) 'Preservation policies', in Kenny, G., *A reading guide to the preservation of library collections*. London: Library Association Publishing, 15.

Coates, P.R. The retrospective indexing of two colonial newspapers. *The Indexer* 13(3), 183-84.

Collins, A. (2001) *Using Colindale and other newspaper resources*. Bury: Federation of Family History Societies.

Conhaim, W. W. (1998) Linking up to a global network. *Link-up* 15 (1), 5, 11-12.

Conway, P. (1996) *Conversion of microfilm to digital imagery: a demonstration project - performance report on the production conversion phase of Project Open Book*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Conway, P. (1996) *Preservation in the digital world*. Washington, DC: Commission on Preservation and Access. Also pub. in (1996) *Microform and Imaging Review* 25, 156-71.

Conway, P. (1996) Selecting microfilm for digital preservation: a case study from Project Open Book. *Library Resources and Technical Services* 40, 67-77.

Conway, P. & Weaver, S. (1994) The setup phase of Project Open Book: a report to the Commission on Preservation and Access on the status of an effort to convert microfilm to digital imagery. *Microform Review* 23, 107-119.

Copeman, H., Eagle, S. and Harrison, M. (1998) NEWSPLAN – first on the net. LASER leads – how to follow. Paper presented at the 4<sup>th</sup> NEWSPLAN conference, Durham, April. <http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan>

Cowley, R. (1990) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in the North Western Region, September 1986-January 1990*. London: British Library.

Cox, S.M. and Budeit, J. L. (1983) *Early English newspapers 1622-1800: bibliography and guide to the microfilm collection*. Woodbridge, CT and Reading: Research Publications. <http://microform.gale.com>

Cramer, M. D. and Markland, M. J. (1989) Newspaper indexing with Pro-cite. *College and Research Libraries* 50 (9), 807-8.

Crane, R. S. and Kaye, F. B. (1927) *A census of British newspapers and periodicals 1620-1800*. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press.

Cranfield, G. (1986) New microfilm reading room at the British Library Newspaper Library. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (6), 2.

Cranfield, G. and Westmancoat, J. (1986) 'The Newspaper Library, Colindale', in Paisey, D., ed. *German studies: British resources*. London: British Library, 66-70.

Cranfield, G. A. (1952) *Handlist of English newspapers and periodicals, 1700-1760*. Cambridge: Bowes and Bowes.

Cranfield, G.A. (1956) *Handlist of English newspapers and periodicals, 1700-1760: additions and corrections*. *Transactions of the Cambridge Bibliographical Society* 2, 269-74.

Croucher, M (1998/99) NEWSPLAN conference 1998. *Newspaper Library News* (25), 13-14.

Crump, M. (2002) 'The British Library's policy with regard to newspaper disposal', in McKitterick, D. ed (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 87-98.

Cummings, C.F. (1993) Newspapers and local history. *New Jersey Libraries* 26 (4) 30-37.

Cunha, G. D. M. and Cunha, D. G. (1971) *Conservation of library materials: a manual and bibliography on the care, repair and restoration of library materials*. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow.

Curle, B. (1984) Yesterday's newspapers today. *Local Studies Librarian* 3 (2), 13-16.

(1994) *Current perspectives on newspaper preservation and access: report of the 2nd national NEWSPLAN conference, March 1994*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Information North for NEWSPLAN.

Danley, J. P. (1986) Newspapers and their readers: the United States Newspaper Program's list of intended audience terms. *Cataloging and Classification Quarterly* 6 (4), 85-106.

Davison, P., ed. (1971) 'Newspapers and magazines', in I.P. Willison, ed. *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature, 1900-1950*. Vol 4. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, cols 1329-1408.

Day, A. (1994) *The new British Library*. London: Library Association Publishing, 99-108.

Deegan, M. (2003) Position paper on the digitization of historic newspapers. <http://digitalcooperative.oclc.org/digitalnewspaper>

Deegan, M., Steinel, E., and King, E. (2002) *British Library microfilmed newspapers and Oxford grey literature online: project report*. <http://kcl.ac.uk/humanities/cch/malibu>

Deegan, M., Steinel, E., Men, A. and King, E. (2003) The British Library newspaper pilot. <http://digitalcooperative.oclc.org/digitalnewspaper>



Deegan, M., Steinel, E. and King, E. (2002) Digitizing historic newspapers: progress and prospects. *RLG Digi News* 6 (3), 1-11.  
<http://rlg.org./preserv/diginews>

Delaunay, E. (1989) Developments in France: the general management of a newspaper collection. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (10), 6-9.

Delaunay, E. (1988) 'The general management of a newspaper collection', in Gibb, I.P., ed. (1988) *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K.G. Saur, 119-30.

Delong, L. (1988) Manitoba newspaper project indexing pilot project. *Current Research in Library and Information Science* 6 (4), 76.

Dewe, M. (1972) Indexing local newspapers. *Assistant Librarian* 65 (4), 58-9.

DeWitt, D.L. (1998) *Going digital: strategies for access, preservation and conversion of collections to digital format*. New York: Haworth Press.

(2000) Digital developments. *Newspaper Library News* 28 (Summer), 4-5.

(1998) Digital images in libraries. *Vine* 107, 1-80.

Dixon, D. (1996) 'Annual review of work in newspaper history', in *Studies in newspaper and periodical history 1994*. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 201-10.

Dixon, D. (1997) 'Annual review of work in newspaper history', in *Studies in newspaper and periodical history 1995*. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 202-10.

Dixon, D. (1999) Annual review of work in newspaper history, 1996-98. *Media History* 5, 201-21.

Dixon, D., (2000), Annual review of work in newspaper history. *Media History* 6, 81-92.

Dixon, D. (2001) Annual review of work in newspaper history. *Media History* 7, 87-94.

Dixon, D. (2000) Con man or honest broker?: advertising in local newspapers. *Local Studies Librarian* 19 (1), 12-16.

Dixon, D. (1986) First annual review of work in newspaper history. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 2, 52-56.

Dixon, D. (1991) Fourth annual review of work in newspaper history. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 7, 48-53

Dixon, D. (1987) I think it happened a few weeks ago... access to recent news. *Refer* 4 (3), 6-9.

- Dixon, D. (1976) *Local newspapers and periodicals of the nineteenth century: a checklist of holdings in provincial libraries*. 2nd edn. Leicester: University of Leicester, Victorian Studies Centre.
- Dixon, D. (2003) Navigating the maze: sources for press history. *Media History* 9 (1), 83-91.
- Dixon, D. (2002) NEWSPLAN. *Library and Information Update* 1 (3), 305.
- Dixon, D. (2002) 'Non musical newspapers and periodicals', in Foreman, L., ed. *A guide to sources of information in Music*. München: K. G. Saur, 155-67.
- Dixon, D. (1984) The provincial press: a decade of writings, 1972-1981. *Victorian Periodicals Review* 17, 103-7.
- Dixon, D. (2001) Recycling our newspapers. *Library Association Record* 103 (5), 288-9.
- Dixon, D. (1987) Second annual review of work in newspaper history. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 3, 42-49.
- Dixon, D. (1998) Survey of newspapers primarily advertising journals. A report submitted to the British Library Newspaper Library April 1998. Unpublished.
- Dixon, D. (1988) Third annual review of work in newspaper history. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 4, 44-49.
- Dixon, D. (1995) Update and index. *Newsplan News* 2, 2.
- Dixon, R. (1996/7) The elusive provincial newspaper. *Newsplan News* 3, 3.
- Donlon, P. (1994) 'Preparing for NEWSPLAN implementation in Ireland', in *NEWSPLAN: current perspectives on newspaper preservation and access. Report of the 2<sup>nd</sup> NEWSPLAN Conference*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Information North, 7-11.
- Drijfhout, D. (1999) Surveying newspapers collections: a quantitative methodology. *International Preservation News* (19), 12-14.
- Durham County Library (1969) *Index to the Durham County Advertiser September 1814 to December 1825*. Durham: Durham County Library.
- Durham County Library (1978) *Index to the Durham County Advertiser January 1826 to December 1835*. Durham: Durham County Library.
- Dyas, E. (1989) The early development of the Newspaper Library. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (10), 4-5.
- Dyas, E. (1988) Hidden indexes in the Newspaper Library's 19th century holdings. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (9), 15.

Dyas, E. (1990) Newspapers: a problem with definitions. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (11), 3-7.

Dyas, E. (1992) Variant editions of the national press. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (14), 6-8; (1993) (15), 3-5.

Eagle, S. (1991) *The collection and preservation of free local newspapers: a report on the problems with proposals for a national strategy*. London: British Library.

Eagle, S. (1996) The LASER NEWSPLAN project: reflections on four years before the masthead. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (18), 4-5.

Eagle, S., assisted by Dixon, D. (1996) *NEWSPLAN report of the project in the London and South Eastern Library Region. January 1992- December 1995*. London: British Library.

Eagle, S. and Hamilton, G. D. (1993) Preserving the perishing paper: NEWSPLAN and your local newspaper. *Local History Magazine* 37, (January/February), 8-11.

Eagle, S. (1998) Read all about it...in 50 years time. *LASER Link* (Spring/Summer ), 12-14.

Einhorn, J. M. (1976) *Guidelines for indexing local newspapers*. Westerly, RI: Westerly Public Library.

Elkington, N. (2002) International efforts to preserve newspapers. Paper presented to 4th NEWSPLAN conference, London April 9th.  
<http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/>, 45-53.

Elliott, B. J. (1980) The problems of indexing a local newspaper. *Local Historian*, 14 (3), 141-3.

Ellis, E. (1990) *A history of the British Library Newspaper Library*. Loughborough University: MA dissertation.

Faries, E. (1951) *The small library as an agent for preserving local history and making it available for reference use*. Columbia University: MA thesis.

Feather, J. (1996) *Preservation and the management of library collections*. 2nd edn. London: Library Association Publishing.

Feather, J., Matthews, G. and Eden P. (1996) *Preservation management policies and practices in British libraries*. Aldershot: Gower.

Ferguson, J.P. (1984) *Directory of Scottish newspapers*. Rev.edn. Edinburgh: National Library of Scotland.

Field, J. (1988) The United States Newspaper Program. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (9), 8-11.

Forrest, G., et al (1987) Local newspaper indexing: a British Library seminar. *Local Studies Librarian* 6 (2), 5-13.



- (1996) Forum on the electronic archiving of newspapers and information. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (21), 6-7.
- Foster, C.D. (1985) Microfilming archives of the Historical Records Survey 1935-42. *Journal of Information Image Management* 18 (June), 33-7.
- Fowles, A. P. (1983) *The Cardigan and Tivyside Advertiser* (1986-1980): a local newspaper project. *Local Studies Librarian* 2 (1), 9-11.
- Fox, L. (1996) *Preservation microfilming: a guide for librarians and archivists*. 2nd edn. Chicago, IL: American Library Association.
- Fox, N. (2002) NEWSPLAN: future developments for public libraries. Paper presented to the 4th NEWSPLAN conference, London, April 9th.  
<http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/70-78>
- Fox, P. (1998) Microfilming versus digitisation as a tool for preservation: long-term access to digital material. *Liber Quarterly* 8, 436-47.
- Friedman, H. A. (1942) *Newspaper indexing*. Milwaukee, WI: Marquette Press.
- Fulton, A. R. (1990) The use of WORM optical storage for newspaper cuttings in a public library. *Electronic Library* 8 (3), 167-71.
- Gabler, A.J. (1981) Checklist of English newspapers before 1801 in the Huntington Library. *Huntington Library Bulletin* 2, whole issue.
- Gee, R. (1987) The English provincial newspaper and its library: a view from the Wapentakes. *Journal of Librarianship* 19 (4), 258-67.
- Gee, R. (1988) News cuttings - an alternative to indexing. *Local Studies Librarian* 7 (2), 7-10.
- Ghosh, S. (1981) Printed newspaper index. *Indian Association of Special Libraries and Information Centres Bulletin* 26 (2), 77-82.
- Gibb, I.P. and Green, S. (1985) Considerations relating to the retention or disposal of newspapers after microfilming. Unpublished Minute circulated to the Consultative Group on Newspapers CGN/Nov 1985.
- Gibb, I.P. (1988) 'Newspaper collections in libraries', in Bromley, D. and Allott, A., eds. *British librarianship and information work 1981-1985*. Vol 2 *Special libraries, materials and processes*. London: Library Association, 36-43.
- Gibb, I.P., ed. (1988) *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K. G. Saur.
- Gibson, J. (2001) *Local newspapers 1750-1920: a select location list*. 2nd edn. Birmingham: Federation of Family History Societies.
- Gillies, S. (1995/96) 90 years of Colindale. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (20), 9-11.



- Gliserman, S. (1969) *Mitchell's Newspaper Press Directory*. Victorian Periodicals Newsletter 4, 21-24.
- Gordon, R. (2000) The news on NEWSPLAN. *Local Studies Group Midlands and Anglia Branch 2* (Autumn), 5-7.
- Gordon, R. (1989) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in the East Midlands*. April 1987-July 1988. London: British Library.
- Goulden, R.J. (1999) The Gouldens and their Canterbury newspapers. *Newspaper Library News* (26), 10-13.
- Gowers, C. (1985) The indexer and Manpower Services Commission schemes. *The Indexer* 14, 3.
- Green, S. (1984) The British Library's Newspaper Library in a new era. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* (1), 1.
- Green, S. (1993) 'The newspaper collections of the British Library', in Cowden, A. and Pinfold, J. *Sources for American history*. London: SCONUL, 13-18.
- Green, S. (1982) The newspaper library and the local library. *Local Studies Librarian* 1 (2), 9.
- Greenall, R.L. (1980) *The Leicester newspapers 1850-1874: a guide for historians*. Leicester: Leicester University Department of Adult Education.
- Griffiths, D. (1998) 'Getting ready for the second millennium: the NEWSPLAN bid to the Heritage Lottery Fund', in Wressell, P. and associates, *NEWSPLAN: Millennia and grids: the digital challenges*. Newcastle: Information North, 11-16. <http://bl.uk/link.concord/newsplan/conf>
- Griffiths, D. (1988) 'The newspaper archivist', in Gibb, I.P. ed. (1988) *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London, August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K. G. Saur, 77-83.
- (1995) 'The Guardian index'. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (19), 5.
- (1978) *A guide to local newspapers in Dyfed*. Carmarthen: Dyfed County Archives.
- (1999) *Guidelines for digital imaging: proceedings of the joint NPO and RLG preservation conference, Warwick, September 1998*. London: National Preservation Office.
- (1997) *Guidelines for indexing newspapers*. Belfast: Library and Information Services Council (Northern Ireland) Local History Panel.
- Gwinn, N. E. (1987) *Preservation microfilming: a guide for librarians and archivists*. Chicago, IL: American Library Association.
- Hagelweide, G. (1974) *Deutsche Zeitungsbestände in Bibliotheken und Archiven*. Dusseldorf: Droste Verlag.

Hamilton, G. (1992) Newspaper preservation and access developments and possibilities. *Interlending and Document Supply* 20 (2), 43-49.

Hamilton, G. (1993) 'Newspapers and newspaper libraries', in Bromley, D. and Allott, A., eds. *British librarianship and information work 1986-1990*. Vol 2 *Special libraries, materials and processes*. London: Library Association, 41-58.

Hamilton, G. (1994) 'Overview and the way forward', in *NEWSPLAN: current perspectives on newspaper preservation and access. Report of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Newsplan Conference*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Information North, 59-63.

Hamilton, G. (2003) 'Satisfying researchers' needs for access to newspapers: are there solutions to an old problem?', in Walravens, H. and King, E. *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur, 47-50.

Hamilton, G. (1990) A ticket to history. *British Book News* (April), 242-44.

Hammond, H. (2000) From fire to file: rebuilding press cuttings and image collections. <http://heds.herts.ac.uk/conf>

Hammond, H. (1998) 'Norfolk's potential newspaper database: a cautionary tale', in Wressell, P. and associates, (1998) *NEWSPLAN, millennia and grids: the digital challenges*. Newcastle: Information North, 55-58.  
<http://bl.uk/linc/concord/newsplan/conf>

Harriman, R.B. (1984) *Newspaper cataloging manual*. Washington, DC: Library of Congress.

Harriman, R.B. (2002) The United States Newspaper Program: scope, achievement and progress. Paper presented to 4th NEWSPLAN conference, London April 9th.  
<http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/23-26>

Harris, M. (1986) 'Collecting newspapers: developments at the British Museum during the nineteenth century', in Myers, R. and Harris, M., eds. *Bibliophily*. Cambridge: Chadwyck Healey, 44-62.

Harris, M. (1988) 'The history and bibliography of English newspapers', in Gibb, I.P., ed. *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12<sup>th</sup>-15<sup>th</sup> 1987*. London and Paris: K. G. Saur, 34-43.

Harris, P.R. (1998) *A history of the British Museum Library 1753-1973*. London: British Library.

Havens, C. (1987) Participating in a newspaper project in a NOTIS library, *Serials Librarian* 13 (1), 85-89.

Hench, J.B. (2002) 'The American Antiquarian Society as a repository of last resort for pre-twentieth-century American newspapers', in McKitterick, D., ed



(2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 71-74.

Henderson, P. (2001) Clippings to computers: the great newspaper migration. *Library Mosaics* 12 (3), 17-18.

Hendley, A.M. (1983) *The archival storage potential of microform, magnetic media and optical data discs: a comparison based on a literature review.* Hertford: National Reprographic Centre for Documentation.

Hill, F.J. (1991) 'Newspapers', in Harris, P.R., ed. *Library of the British Museum: retrospective essays on the Department of Printed Books.* London: British Library, 50-54.

History through local newspapers in Yorkshire and the Humber region.  
<http://yli.org.newsplan/yindex>

Hoffman, R. (1986) The Pennsylvania newspaper project: initial stages. *Serials Librarian* 10 (3), 74.

Hovish, J. J. (1983) The local newspaper in the British public library: problems of storage, bibliographical control and exploitation. University of Wales: MPhil thesis.

Howat, M. M. (1992) Nineteenth century Perth newspapers indexed and abstracted. *The Indexer* 18 (1), 16-18.

Howell, A. (1998) Preservation digitising of newspapers. *International Preservation News* (16) 24-28. <http://alanhowell.com.aci/papers>

Hutton, B (1988) Preserving Scotland's heritage. *Library Conservation News* (April), 1-3.

(1987) Important survey of current UK provincial newspapers. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (7), 2.

(1982) Increase in free distribution newspapers. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (4), 2.

(1993) 'Indexes', in *The Chicago manual of style*. 14<sup>th</sup> edn. Chicago, IL: University of Chicago Press, 703-716.

(1982) Indexing the *Grangemouth Advertiser*. *Locscot* 1 (2), 25-29.

IFLA Working Group on Newspapers (1980) *International standard bibliographic description for serials ISBD (S)*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edn. London: IFLA Office for UBC.

IFLA Working Group on Newspapers (1988) 'The retention or disposal of newspapers after microfilming: draft policy statement', in Gibb, I.P. ed. *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987.* London and Paris: K. G. Saur, 421-23.

Jacox, E. P. (1984) Newspapers on microform. *Idaho Librarian* 36, 56.

- Jefcoate, G. (2003) 'The digitisation of the Burney collection of early newspapers at the British Library', in Walravens, H. and King, E. *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur, 183-87.
- Jephcott, S. (1998) Why digitise? Principles in planning and managing a successful digitisation project. *New Review of Academic Librarianship* 4, 39-52.
- Johannson, E. (1986) The British Library Newspaper Library: looking ahead. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 3, 3.
- Johannson, E. (1988) 'National approaches to newspaper preservation: the United Kingdom', in Gibb, I.P., ed. *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K. G. Saur, 342-51.
- Jones, A., et al. (2000). 'Newspapers and magazines', in Shattock, J., ed. *Cambridge bibliography of English literature*, Vol 4 1800-1900. 3rd edn. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, cols 2849-2978.
- Jones, B. (1988) 'National approaches to newspaper preservation: Wales', in Gibb, I.P. ed. *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K. G. Saur, 342-51.
- Jones, B. (1994) *NEWSPLAN report of the project in Wales*. London: British Library.
- Jones, H. and Beagrie, N. (2001) *Preservation management of digital materials: a handbook*. London: British Library for RE:source.
- Jones-Randall, K. (1989) Developing a microcomputer based index to a local newspaper. *Computers in Libraries* 9 (6), 20-22.
- Kenney, A. R. (1993) Digital to microfilm conversion: an interim preservation solution. *Library Resources and Technical Services* 37, 380-402.
- Kenney, A. R. (1997) Digital to microfilm conversion: a demonstration project 1994-1996. Final report to the National Endowment for the Humanities. <http://cornell.edu/preservation/pub.html>
- Kenney, A. R. & Chapman, S. (1996) *Digital imaging for libraries and archives*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University.
- Kenney, A.R. and Personuis, L.K. (1992) The future of digital preservation. *Advances in Preservation and Access* 1, 195-212.
- Kessler, S. P. (1968) Microform index of local history in the Moorstown Free Library. *New Jersey Libraries* ns 1 (Winter), 10-14.
- Klement, S. (2002) Open system vs closed system indexing. *The Indexer* 23 (1), 23-31.



Knee, M. (1982) Producing a local newspaper index. *The Indexer* 13 (2), 101.

Koch, J. E. (1985) Newspaper indexing: planning and options. *Special Libraries* 74(4), 272-74.

Komorous, H. and Harriman, R.B. (1989) *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers*. IFLA. UBCIM Programme. München: K. G. Saur.  
<http://ifla.org/VII/rt13/broch/intguide>

Komorous, H. (1985) *Newspaper cataloguing manual*. Victoria, BC: British Columbia Library Association.

Kraft, N. (1987) The Iowa newspaper project: a field report. *Serials Librarian* 12 (1/2), 85-89.

Lancaster, F.W. (2003) *Indexing and abstracting in theory and practice*. 3<sup>rd</sup> edn. London: Library Association.

Lathrop, N. L. (1964) Approach to newspaper indexing: *Flint Journal* report. *RQ* 3 (May), 11-12.

Lauder, J. (1994) 'Conception, birth and first four months of the Scottish Newspapers Microfilming Unit', in *NEWSPLAN: current perspectives on newspaper preservation and access. Report of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Newsplan Conference*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Information North, 33-37.

Lauder, J. (2002) NEWSPLAN 2000 steams ahead. *NEWSPLAN News* 7, 1.

Lauder, J. (2000/2001) The NEWSPLAN 2000 project. *Newspaper Library News* (29), 10-11.

Lauder, J. (2003) Partnerships in preservation: the experience of the NEWSPLAN 2000 project. *IFLA Journal* 29 (1), 47-51. Also published in Walravens, H. and King, E. *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur.

Lauder, J. (1995-96) Preserving Scotland's newspapers. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (20), 2-4.

Library of Congress. Preservation Directorate (1997) *Digitizing library and archive collections for preservation and archiving: a handbook for curators*. Washington, DC: Library of Congress. Preservation Directorate

Linton, D. (1987) Mitchell's, May's and Sell's: newspaper directories of the Victorian era. *Journal of Newspaper and Periodical History* 3 (2), 20-28.

Linton, D. and Boston, R. (1987) *The newspaper press in Britain: an annotated bibliography*. London: Mansell.

Linton, D. (1995) Parameters of press bibliography. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (19), 2-3.

Linton, D. (1994) *The twentieth century newspaper press in Britain*. London: Mansell.

(1990) *Local history conservation guidelines*. Warwick: Warwickshire County Library.

(1982) Local newspaper indexing in the UK. *The Indexer* 13(2),103.

(1980) *Local history: conservation and restoration procedures for public libraries*. Sydney: Library Association of Australia, NSW Branch.

(1980) *A local index to the Dumfries and Galloway Standard and Advertiser and its predecessors over 200 years*. Dumfries: J.Urquhart.

(1991) Local indexing continues. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (12), 9.

Lombardo, D. (1987) The use of microform to support the Amherst Local History Project. *Microform Review* 16 (2), 130-3

(1999) Lottery cash to save newspapers. *Information Management Report* (May), 8-9.

Lyall, J. (1993) The preservation of newspapers: international trends. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Serials Librarianship* 4(1), 1-6.

McAdams, F., Baird, P. and Gibb, F. (1985) Indexing the *Glasgow Herald*. *Catalogue and Index* 78/79, 8.

McCue, J. (2002) 'Newspapers and archives', in McKitterick, D., ed (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 65-70.

McDougall, J. (1994) *Guidelines for the microfilming of newspapers*. Dublin and London: National Library of Ireland and the British Library Newspaper Library.

McIntyre, J. (2002) BS4971:2002 New recommendations for the conservation treatment of documents. *NPO Journal* 10, 9.

MacKenzie, A. (1994) *NEWSPLAN: report of the Newsplan project in Scotland*. London: British Library.

McKenzie, A. (2003) 'A window on the world: newspaper collecting in the National Library of Australia', in Walravens, H. and King, E. *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur, 161-74.

McKitterick, D., ed. (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication.

McLaughlin, E. (2000) *Family history from newspapers*. London: Society of Genealogists.

Madden, L. and Dixon, D. (1978) 'Histories and studies of individual periodicals', in Vann J. D. and VanArsdel, R. *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. New York: Modern Language Association, 99-122.

Madden, L. and Dixon, D. (1989) 'Histories and studies of individual periodicals 1976-1986', in Vann, J. D. and VanArsdel, R.T. *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. Vol. 2. New York: Modern Language Association, 147-64.

Madden, L. and Dixon, D. (1975) *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies 1901-1971*. Toronto: Research Society for Victorian Periodicals.

Mander, D. (1997/98) Management of a local newspaper collection. *Newspaper Library News* (24), 4-5.

Manders, F.W. D. (1982) *Bibliography of British Newspapers: Durham and Northumberland*. London: British Library.

Manders, F., Green S. and Milne M. (1982) Newspapers and local history, *Local Studies Librarian* 1 (2), 1-20.

Mandler, P. (2002) 'Scholars vs library: grounds for a truce?', in McKitterick, D. ed, (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 75-80.

Mannerheim, J. (1988) 'Preservation microfilming: some considerations on the planning of newspaper microfilming and its consequences for librarians and users', in Gibb, I.P., ed. (1988) *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the Symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K. G. Saur, 424-41.

Manning, R.W. and Kremp, V. (2000) *A reader in preservation and conservation*. München: K. G. Saur.

(1984) Manpower Services Commission indexing. *The Indexer* 14 (1), 29.

(1984) The Manpower Services Commission: professional response. *The Indexer* 14(3), 193.

Mansfield, P. (1998) *Sherborne and Yeovil Mercury 1777. Names index*. Cardiff: Private printing.

(1978) *A manual for newspaper bibliographic projects: the final report of the Iowa Pilot Project of the United States Newspaper Project*. Des Moines, IA: University of Iowa.

Matheson, A. (1998) NEWSPLAN: preserving newspaper heritage. *NPO Journal* 1, 8-10.

Matheson, A. (1987) Scottish newspapers. *Library Review* 36 (8), 179-85.

- Matheson, A. (1988) 'Scottish newspapers', in Gibb, I.P. ed. *Newspaper preservation and access. Proceedings of the symposium held in London August 12th-15th 1987*. London and Paris: K. G. Saur, 352-3.
- Maxted, I. (2001) Using local newspapers for learning and leisure. *Metropolitan Lines: newsletter of the the Greater London Archives Network* 56 (June), 24-5 . [http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met\\_56.pdf](http://hmc.gov.uk/glan/met_56.pdf)
- Mellon Microfilming Project (1992) *Microfilming manual*. London: Mellon Microfilming Project, British Library and National Preservation Office.
- Mellors, A. and Radford, J. (1987) *Bibliography of British newspapers: Derbyshire*. London: British Library.
- Melrose, E.A (1996) Enthusiasm for NEWSPLAN undimmed. *NEWSPLAN News* 4, 2.
- Melrose, E.A. (2003) 'From the *Bristol Post Boy* to the twin towers: local newspapers in England', in Walravens, H. and King, E. (2003) *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur, 247-53.  
<http://ifla.org/IV/ifla68/papers/058-127e>
- (1996) Microform series in the British Library. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (21), 10-11.
- Miekowska, S. (2000) Investigating digital collections: some perspectives. *Newspaper Library News* 29 (1), 8.
- Milford, R. T. and Sutherland, D. M. (1935) *A catalogue of British newspapers and periodicals in the Bodleian Library*. Oxford: The Library.
- Mills, T.F. (1981) Yesterday's news for today's historian: a brief history of newspaper preservation, bibliography and indexing. *Journal of Library History* 16, 463-71 .
- Milne, M (1982) The historian and local newspaper. *Local Studies Librarian*, 1 (2), 3-5.
- Milne, R. (2002) 'Joint solutions: the Research Support Libraries Programme, the Distributed National Collection and the importance of cross-sectoral collaboration', in McKitterick, D., ed (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 81-86.
- Milner, A. C. (1977) *Newspaper indexes: a location and subject guide for researchers*. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow.
- M.M.B. (2000) Save America's newspapers from microfilm. *Micrographics and Hybrid Imaging Systems Newsletter* August. 9-10.  
<http://palimpsest.stanford.edu>
- Muddiman, J. G., comp. (1920) *Tercentenary handlist of English and Welsh newspapers, magazines and reviews* London: Times Publishing Company. (facsimile reprint Dawsons 1966).



- Mulvany, N.C. (1999) Software tools for indexing. *The Indexer* 21, 160-63.
- Munford, A. P. (1976) *South Yorkshire newspapers, 1754-1974*. Wakefield: South Yorkshire County Council, Dept of Culture, Recreation and Health.
- Murphy, M. (1991) *Newspapers and local history*. Chichester: Phillimore for the British Association for Local History.
- National Preservation Office (2000) *Guide to preservation microfilming*. London: National Preservation Office.
- (1989) News from Wales. *Library Conservation News* (April), 8.
- (1991) News on newspapers. *Local Studies Librarian* 10 (1), 10-11.
- (1981) Newspaper indexes increase conservation problems. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (2), 2-3.
- (1987) Newspaper indexing projects. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (7), 10.
- (1993) Newspaper indexing policy and procedures.  
<http://sunsite.uc.edu/journalism/index>
- (1986) Newspaper indexing projects. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (6), 6.
- (1990) Newspaper preservation and access: a symposium held in 1987 by IFLA. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (11), 9.
- (1905) *Newspapers published in Great Britain and Ireland 1801-1900*. Published as a Supplement to the *British Museum Catalogue of Printed Books*. London: British Museum.
- (1981) *Newspapers of New York State: a statewide plan for bibliographic control and preservation. Final report of the task force on bibliography and preservation*. Albany, NY: University of the State of New York.
- (1994-5) NEWSPLAN news. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (18), 4-5.
- (1995) NEWSPLAN news. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (19), 4.
- (2000) NEWSPLAN 2000 and other NEWSPLAN news. *Newspaper Library News* (28), 2.
- Noordof, M. (1991) Indexing with Authex. *Computers in Libraries* 11 (1), 25-26.
- (1996) Notes for county editors: *Bibliography of British Newspapers* 10th revision August 1996. Unpublished.

North, J.S., comp (1997) *The Waterloo directory of English newspapers and periodicals, 1800-1900*. 10 vols. Waterloo, Ont: North Waterloo Academic Press.

Nupham, L. (1988) *Newspapers in the library: approaches to management and reference work*. New York: Haworth.

Ogden, S. (1994) *Preservation of library and archival materials*. Andover, MA: Northeast Documentation Center.

Olney, D. (1987) The Newspaper Library's catalogue. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (7), 2.

(1999/2000) Online catalogue of the collections of the *British Library Newspaper Library Reading Rooms*. *Newspaper Library News* (27), 1.

O'Toole, J. (1998) *NEWSPLAN report of the project in Ireland*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edn. London: British Library.

Palmer, J. (1980) Manual for the bibliographical description of serials. Presented at the annual conference of the Research Society for Victorian Periodicals Philadelphia 24-25 October 1980. Unpublished.

Parkes, A. (1989) *NEWSPLAN report of the project in Yorkshire and Humberside. March 1988-September 1989*. London: British Library. Updated by (1996) *Newsplan in Yorkshire and Humberside. Cumulative update of local newspaper holdings, 1990-95; Newsplan in Yorkshire and Humberside: index to local newspapers by place*. Wakefield: Yorkshire and Humberside Joint Library Services.

Parry, D. (1990) *NEWSPLAN report of the project in the Northern Region. October 1987-September 1988*. London: British Library.

Pasqua, T., et al (1975) Automated indexing for newspapers: two suggested approaches. *Journalism Quarterly* 52, 291-96.

Pedley, P. (2002) Resources revealed: tracking down newspapers and periodicals on the web. *Managing Information* 89 (1) 48-49.

Perica, E. (1975) *Newspaper indexing for historical societies, colleges and high schools*. New York: Research Libraries Group.

Petty, M. (1981) The exploitation of newspapers in the Cambridgeshire collection - a few notes. *Local Studies Group Newsletter* 4 (1), 4-5.

Pinfold, J. (1986) Local newspapers and local history. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (6), 4-6, 8.

Pollard H. G. (1940) 'The newspaper', in Bateson, F.W. ed. *The Cambridge bibliography of English literature* Vol. 2 1660-1800. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 689-733.

Pollard H. G. (1940) 'Newspapers and magazines', in Bateson, F.W. ed. *The Cambridge bibliography of English literature* Vol 3 1800-1900. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 779-842.

- Porck, H. (1996) *Mass deacidification: an update on possibilities and limitations*. Washington, DC: Commission on Preservation and Access.
- (1999) Preservation Resources looks to the future through the past. *OCLC Newsletter* (238), 24-34.
- Prior, K. (2001) Digitising Eastern Counties newspapers for the Norfolk and Norwich Millennium Library. *Newspaper Library News* (30), 16-17.
- (1901) *Progress of the British newspaper in the nineteenth century*. London: Simpkin and Marshall, Hamilton, Kent.
- (1982) Progress on newspaper indexes. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (4), 4.
- (1993) RASD Guidelines for preservation, conservation and restoration of local history and local genealogical materials. *RQ* 32 (3), 341-44.
- Ratcliffe, F.W., ed. (1984), *Preservation policies and conservation in British libraries*, London: British Library (Library and Information Report 25)
- Raymond, J. (1995) Some corrections and alterations to *British newspapers and periodicals 1641-1700: a short title catalogue*. *Notes and Queries* 42, 451-53.
- Readings, R. and Holland, M. (2003) 'The Thunderer' on the web. *Library and Information Update* 2(7), 38-41.
- Reed-Scott, J. (1994) Digitizing research materials: questions to be considered. *ARL Newsletter* 172, 5.
- Rees, E. (1988) Wales and the preservation problem. *Library Conservation News* (January), 1-3.
- Rees, N. (1988) Microfilming current UK newspapers. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (9), 10.
- Reid, C. (1996) 'Newspapers', in Lee, P. and Day, A. *The reference sources handbook*. London: Library Association Publishing, 251-71.
- Reid, P.H. (2003) *The digital age and local studies*. Aldershot: Gower.
- (1993) Retention of UK newspapers after microfilming. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (15), 9-10.
- Rice, Herbert (1972) To whom is the newspaper index useful? *Milwaukee Sentinel* 24 April, 12.
- Richards, H. (1991) History stored in column inches. *Times Higher Education Supplement* 1 December, 7.
- Robinson, P. (1993) *The digitization of primary textual sources*. Oxford: Office for Humanities Communication.

- Roper, M (1982) Advanced technical media: the conservation and storage of machine readable and audio-visual records. *Journal of the Society of Archivists* 7 (2), 106-112.
- Rosenberg, S. & Rosenberg, H. (1971) 'Newspapers and magazines', in Willison, I.P., ed., *New Cambridge bibliography of English literature*, Vol.3 1800-1900, cols 1755-1884.
- Rosenberg, S. & Rosenberg, H. (1968) Nineteenth century newspapers and magazines in the *New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature*. *Victorian Periodicals Newsletter* 1, 16-17.
- Rothman, J. (1966) Preserving the news that's fit to print. *The Indexer* 5, 39-42.
- Rowles, J. and Maxted, I. (1991) *Bibliography of British Newspapers: Cornwall and Devon*. London: British Library.
- Russell, R.A. (1989) Colindale newspaper conservation bindery. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (10), 13.
- Schmude, I. Can library collections survive? The problem of paper deterioration. *Australian Library Journal* 33 (1), 15-22.
- Scott, M. (1987) 'Mass deacidification at the National Library of Canada', in Smith, M. (1987) *Preservation of library materials: conference held at the National Library of Austria 1986*. München: K.G. Saur, 134-39. (IFLA Publications 40)
- Schuchard, R. (2002) 'Why I go to Colindale', in McKitterick, D., ed (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 49-58.
- Secker, J. (1999) Newspapers and historical research: a study of users and custodians in Wales. University of Wales Aberystwyth: PhD thesis.
- Secker, J. (1999/2000) The people's heritage: newspapers and historical research. Newspaper indexing projects. *Newspaper Library News* (27), 11-12.
- (1987) Seminar on newspaper indexing, University of York, 10 April 1987, *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter*, (8) (June), 5-13.
- Semonche, B. (1993) *News media libraries: a management handbook*. Westport, CT: Greenwood.
- Semonche, B. (1993) 'Newspaper indexing policies and procedures' <http://ibiblio.org.journalism/indexing>
- Shakespeare, K. (1993) Indexing the *Leicester Mercury*. Loughborough University: MA thesis.



Shattock, J. (1978) 'General histories of the press', in Vann J. D. and VanArsdel, R.T., eds. *Victorian Periodicals: a guide for research*. New York: Modern Language Association, 80-98.

Smethurst, M., ed. (1997) *A review of the policy and arrangements for the legal deposit of printed material in the British Library*. London: British Library.

Smith, A. (1999) *Why digitise?* Washington, DC: Commission on Preservation and Access.

Smith, D. R. (1978) *Newspaper indexing handbook for small libraries*. Arlington, VA: Educational Resources Information Center

Smith, G. (1995) 'Access to newspaper collections in a time of change', in Walravens, H. and King, E. *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur, 83-88. <http://ifla.org/IV/ifla61/smig>

Smith, G. (1993) Developments in electronic storage and access to newspaper data: a Newspaper Library view. Unpublished paper. Circulated to Consultative Committee on Newspapers as minute CG93/4.

Smith, G. (1994) 'Digitisation: capabilities and limitations', in *NEWSPLAN: current perspectives on newspaper preservation and access. Report of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Newsplan Conference*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Information North, 54-58.

Smith, G. (1995) Free newspapers: a national policy for their collection and preservation. *Local Studies Librarian*, 14 (1), 13-14.

Smith, G. (1997) 'Strengths and gaps in bibliographic and physical access to newspapers'. Paper presented to Symposium on access to and preservation of global newspapers, May 27-28<sup>th</sup>, Washington, DC. <http://icon.crl.edu/al>

Smith, G. (2002) 'Why preserve and what to preserve: in the light of the first resolution of the Washington Symposium?', in Budd, J. ed. (2002) *Managing the preservation of periodicals and newspapers*. München: K. G. Saur, 34-43. (IFLA Publications 103)

Smith, L. (1975) *Devon Newspapers: a finding list*. 2nd edn. Exeter: Standing Conference for Devon History.

Smyth, S. (2001) NEWSPLAN: preserving Ireland's newspaper heritage. *SCONUL Newsletter* (22), 13-15.

Snyder, H.L. (1997) 'Newsletters and newspapers: the circulation of news in Britain in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries', in Walravens, H. and King, E. *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur, 123-29. <http://ifla.org/IV/ifla63/63snyh>

Sparks, P. (1987) 'Mass deacidification at the Library of Congress', in Smith, M. A. *Preservation of library materials: conference held at the National Library of Austria 1986*. München: K. G. Saur, 134-39. (IFLA Publications 40)

Spencer, N. (1997) *News information: online: CD Rom and Internet resources*. London: British Library.

Stam, D. (1983) *National preservation planning in the United Kingdom: an American perspective*. London: British Library. (Research and Development Report 5759)

Stanley, Rob (1991) NEWSPLAN annual conference, 1991. *Local Studies Librarian* 10 (2), 12-13.

Starr, M.J. and Komorous, H. (1987) Canadian newspapers: the decentralised approach to preservation. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (7), 6-9.

(1979) *Stirling Journal and Advertiser: a local index*. Stirling: Stirling University.

Strauss, R. J. (2000) Mass deacidification: where it fits in with reformatting. *Microform and Imaging Review* 29, 8-10.

(1995) *Subject indexing: principles and practices in the '90s. Proceedings of the IFLA Satellite Meeting held in Lisbon, Portugal 17th-18th August 1993*. München: K.G. Saur.

Swartzburg, S.G. (1980) *Preserving library materials: a manual*. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow.

Tait, F. (1990) 'News and current information', in Lea, P. and Day, A. *Printed reference material*. 3rd edn. London: Library Association Publishing, 136-58.

Tangye, N. (1980) *Cornwall newspapers 18th and 19th century: gazetteer and finding list*. Truro: Trevithick Society and the Institute of Cornish Studies.

Thorin, S.E. (1995) The National Library: digitization at the Library of Congress. *European Research Libraries Cooperation* 5, 145-181.

Thorp, J. (1988) *In safe-keeping: the preservation of rare books and archives*. Winchester: Hampshire Archives Trust and Hampshire County Library.

Torrington, S. (1987) Computers and local newspaper indexing: experience of the publisher/ indexer. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 12-13.

Turko, K. (1996) Preservation activities in Canada: a unifying theme in a decentralised country. *European Research Libraries Cooperation* 6 (2), 117-47.

Turner, J. H. (1988) The suitability of diazo film for long term storage. *Microform Review* 17 (3), 142-45.

Uffelman, L. (1992) *The nineteenth century periodical press in Britain: a bibliography of modern studies, 1972-1991*. Evansville, IL: Research

Society for Victorian Periodicals.

UK and Ireland NEWSPLAN Panel (2002) Retention and storage of local newspapers and microfilm by libraries.

<http://bl.uk/concord/linc/newsplan/retention>

Urdoh, E. E. (1980) Techniques for information retrieval of newspaper articles with special reference to Nigeria. University of Wales: MLib thesis.

Vann J. D. and VanArsdel, R. T. (1978) 'Finding lists for Victorian periodicals', in Vann, J. D. and Van Arsdel, R. (1978) *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. New York: Modern Language Association, 52-63.

Vann J. D. and VanArsdel, R. T., eds (1978) *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. New York: Modern Language Association.

Vann, J. D. and Van Arsdel, R. T. (1989) *Victorian periodicals: a guide to research*. Vol 2. New York: Modern Language Association.

Vela, L. (1983) Les bibliografies de la premsa local. *Bullettin de l'Associacio de Bibliotecaries de Catalunya* 3 (January-June), 50-57.

Vierra, B. and Trice, T. (1980) Local newspaper indexing: a public library reports its experience. *Serials Librarian* 5 (1), 87-91.

Walford, C. (1883) The outline for a scheme for a dictionary of periodical literature. *The Bibliographer* 3, 121-26, 169-73; 4, 13-15, 38-48.

Walker, A. (1986) Creating a newspaper index: microcomputers to the rescue. *Wilson Library Bulletin* 61, 26-29.

Walravens, H. and King, E. (2003) *Newspapers in international librarianship. Papers presented by the Newspapers Section at IFLA General Conferences*. München: K.G. Saur.

Wall, C. (1987) Newspaper indexing using an IBM mainframe computer and text formatting program. *Information Technology and Libraries* 6 (1), 24-39.

Ward, W. S. (1972) *British periodicals and newspapers, 1789-1832: a bibliography of secondary sources*. Lexington, KY: Kentucky University Press.

Ward, W.S. (1954) *Index and finding list of serials published in the British Isles, 1789-1832*. Lexington, KY: Kentucky University Press.

Waters, P. (1979) *Procedures for the salvage of water damaged library materials*. Washington, DC: Library of Congress.

Watkins, T. J. (1990) *NEWSPLAN report of the project in the West Midlands. September 1988 – September 1989*. London: British Library.

Watson, I. (1996-97) *The Herald* on CD Rom. *Locscot* 3 (7), 14-15.

Watthews, E. (1987) *The Ipswich Journal* index. *British Library Newspaper Library Newsletter* (8), 6-7.

- Wax, B. (1964) Newspaper collections and history. *Library Trends* 13 (2), 254-72.
- Weber, H. and Dorr, M. (1997) *Digitisation as a means of preservation?* Amsterdam: European Commission on Preservation and Access.
- Weed, K. and Bond R.P. (1946) *Studies in British newspapers and periodicals from their beginnings to 1800: a bibliography*. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press.
- Wells, R. (1986) *NEWSPLAN report of the pilot project in the south west*. London: British Library.
- West, J. (1983) 'Newspapers', in West, J. *Town records*. Chichester: Phillimore, 224-71.
- Westmancoat, J. (1985) *Newspapers*. London: British Library.
- Westmancoat, J. (1991) 'Newspapers and periodicals', in Dewe M. (1991) *Local studies collections: a manual*. Aldershot: Gower, 302-58.
- Whatmore, G. (1973) Classification for news libraries. *Aslib Proceedings* 25(6), 208.
- Whatmore, G. (1978) *The modern news library*. London: Library Association.
- Whiffin, J. & Havermans, J. ed. (1998) *Library preservation and conservation in the '90s. Proceedings of a satellite meeting of the IFLA Section on Preservation and Conservation. Budapest, Hungary August 15th-17th 1995*. München: K.G. Saur. (IFLA publications 84).
- Wiles, R.M. (1965) *Freshest advices: early provincial newspapers in England*, Columbus, OH: Ohio State University Press.
- Wilkinson, G.R. (1997) At the coal face of history: reflections on using newspapers as a source. *Studies in Newspaper and Periodical History* 1995. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 211-21.
- Williams, P. and Nicholas, D. (2001) Navigating the news net: how news consumers read the electronic version of a daily newspaper. *Libri* 51 (1), 8-16.
- Withey, R. (1994) 'The virtual newspaper and the virtuous archive', in *NEWSPLAN: current perspectives on newspaper preservation and access. Report of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Newsplan Conference*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Information North, 41-46.
- Wittenborg, K. (2002) 'A librarian looks at preservation', in McKitterick, D. ed (2002) *Do we want to keep our newspapers?* London: Office for Humanities Communication, 35-40.
- Wolff, Michael (1967) 'Charting the golden stream: thoughts on a directory of Victorian periodicals', in Robson, J.M. *Editing Nineteenth Century Texts*. Toronto: Toronto UP, 37-59.



Wolff, M ., North, J. S. and Deering, D. eds (1976) *The Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals 1824-1900* (Phase 1). Waterloo, Ont.: Wilfred Laurier University Press.

Woods, E.W. (1981) *Newspaper cataloging manual*. Washington, DC: Library of Congress.

Wressell, P. and associates, (1998) *NEWSPLAN, Millennia and grids: the digital challenges*. Newcastle: Information North.  
<http://bl.uk/concord/iilnc/newsplan/conf>

Zeskey, R. H. (1986) Newspapers on microfilm: history as it was happening (and indexes to help you find your way). *Serials Librarian* 4 (4) 396-99.

## APPENDICES

Appendix 1	Comparative tables of inclusions in bibliographies for Huntingdonshire and Leicestershire	262
Appendix 2	Lists of English provincial newspapers	264
Appendix 3	Newspapers listed as primarily advertising	268
Appendix 4	Lists of free newspapers based on returns from regional NEWSPLAN committees	270
Appendix 5	Free newspapers not included in returns from regional NEWSPLAN committees	282
Appendix 6	Newspapers sampled to determine percentage of news content	289
Appendix 7	Table showing proportion of advertising	291
Appendix 8	Advertising in Merseyside free newspapers	292
Appendix 9	Advertising in Suffolk free newspapers	293
Appendix 10	Newspaper data elements for manual records	294
Appendix 11	Data entry sheet used in New York State	295
Appendix 12	Guidelines for describing newspapers in <i>Bibliography of British Newspapers</i>	297
Appendix 13	Interview with Charles A Toase	300
Appendix 14	Interview with Edmund King	305

## APPENDIX ONE

### COMPARISON OF COVERAGE IN BLC, NEWSPLAN AND THE TTH OF HUNTINGDONSHIRE NEWSPAPERS BEFORE 1900

	BLC	NEWSPLAN	TTH
Eastern Counties Gazette	X	X	X
Hunts and Cambs Observer	X	X	
Hunts Chronicle and Cambridgeshire Weekly News			X
Hunts County News	X		
Hunts Guardian	X	X	X
Huntingdonshire News and Eastern Counties	X		
Hunts Post	X	X	X
Huntingdonshire Times		X	
Huntingdon Weekly News	X	X	
Huntingdon Bedford and Cambridge Weekly News	X	X	
Huntingdon Bedford and Peterborough Weekly News	X	X	
Illustrated St Neots Chronicle and Pictorial	X	X	X
St Ives and Huntingdonshire	X	X	
St Ives Chronicle	X		
St Ives Courier			X
St Ives, Hunts and Cambs	X	X	
St Ives Mercury		X	
St Ives Penny Post			X
St Ives Post		X	X
St Ives Post Boy or Loyal		X	X
St Ives Reporter		X	
St Ives Times	X	X	
Ramsey Courier	X	X	X
Ramsey Observer			X
St Neots Advertiser		X	
St Neots Chronicle		X	
St Neots Free Press	X	X	
St Neots Monthly Advertiser		X	

BLC – British Library Online Catalogue  
 NEWSPLAN -East Midlands NEWSPLAN  
 TTH- Times Tercentenary Handlist

## NINETEENTH CENTURY LEICESTER NEWSPAPERS

BL      TTH      Leics      W

KEMP'S MIDLAND GAZETTE	X	X	X	
LEICESTER AND COUNTY LIBERAL			X	
LEICESTER ATHLETE	X	X		X
LEICESTER CATHOLIC NEWS	X	X		X
LEICESTER CHRONICLE	X	X	X	X
LEICESTER CHRONICLE			X	
LEICESTER CONSERVATIVE STANDARD		X	X	X
LEICESTER DAILY EXPRESS	X	X		X
LEICESTER DAILY EXPRESS	X			X
LEICESTER DAILY POST	X	X	X	X
LEICESTER ECHO	X	X		X
LEICESTER ERA		X		
LEICESTER EVENING NEWS	X	X	X	X
LEICESTER EVENING NEWS	X			
LEICESTER EVENING POST	X	X		X
LEICESTER EVENING STANDARD	X	X		
LEICESTER EVENING TIMES	X	X		X
LEICESTER EXPRESS	X	X		X
LEICESTER FOOTBALL MAIL	X		X	
LEICESTER GUARDIAN	X	X	X	X
LEICESTER HERALD			X	
LEICESTER JOURNAL	X	X	X	
LEICESTER LIFE	X	X		
LEICESTER LIGHT	X	X	X	X
LEICESTER MAIL	X	X		X
LEICESTER MAIL	X	X	X	
LEICESTER MAIL		X	X	
LEICESTER MERCURY	X	X	X	X
LEICESTER NEWS 1857	X	X	X	X
LEICESTER NEWS 1861	X	X		
LEICESTER SPORTING NEWS			X	X
LEICESTER WEEKLY EXPRESS	X	X	X	X
LEICS HERALD	X			X
LEICS MERCURY	X	X		
PAYNE'S LEICESTER & MIDLAND COUNTIES ADVERTISER	X	X	X	X

### Key

BL = *British Library Newspaper Library catalogue*

TTH = *Times tercentenary handlist*

Leics = *Leicestershire County Record Office*

Wat = *Waterloo directory of Victorian periodicals*

The *Waterloo Directory of Victorian Periodicals* lists a *Leicester Evening Paper* August November 1874 for which there are no known copies.

## APPENDIX TWO

### Lists and bibliographies of English provincial newspapers

These are arranged chronologically by publication date. The list excludes individual *NEWSPLAN* volumes and volumes of the *Bibliography of British newspapers*. These are all listed in the Select bibliography, pp. 233 ff.

(nd) A list of Lincolnshire newspapers and magazines. Unpublished MSS in Lincoln Library.

Sayer, F D (nd) A bibliography of Norfolk newspapers 1789-1832. Typescript in Norwich Central Library (pre 1994).

Davidson, J (1852) *Bibliotheca Devonensis: a catalogue of the printed books relating to the County of Devon*. Exeter: Worth. (1862). Supplement.

Worth, J N (1873) *The three towns bibliotheca: a catalogue of books, pamphlets and papers*. Plymouth: np.

(1883) Lancashire periodicals. Bibliographical notes. *Manchester City Notes and Queries* V, 121-23.

Lewis, H (1885) The beginnings of the Bath newspaper press. *Proceedings of the Bath Natural History and Antiquarian Society* 5, 8-21.

Mayo, C (1885) *Bibliotheca Dorsetensis*. London: C Whittingham. See especially 'Newspapers', pp. 74-87.

Scholes, J C (1886) *Bolton bibliography: jottings of book-lore, with notes on local authors and printers*. Manchester: Henry Gray. See especially 'List of local newspapers and periodicals', 242-47.

Morley, J C (1887) *The newspaper and periodical literature of Liverpool*. Liverpool: Liverpool Weekly Mercury (reprinted from the *Liverpool Weekly Mercury*).

Wightman, H (1887) *A list of the newspapers in Lancashire, Yorkshire and Sheffield*. Liverpool: np.

(1890) *Bibliotheca Buckinghamiensis: a list of books relevant to Buckinghamshire*. Aylesbury: De Fraine (reprinted from (1885-90) *Records of Buckinghamshire* 5 & 6).

Briscoe, J P (1890) *Nottinghamshire collection: list of books in the Nottingham Free Public Libraries*. Nottingham: the Library.

Edwards, F (1891) A handlist of Hampshire newspapers. *Hampshire Antiquarian and Naturalist* 1, 94-7; (1892) 2, 77-78.

Gilbert, H.M. and Godwin, G.N. (1891) *Bibliotheca Hantoniensis: a list of books relating to Hampshire, with an additional list of Hampshire newspapers by F.E. Edwards*. Southampton: Ye Olde Boke Shop.

Hunt, W. (1890) *Hull newspapers*. Hull: np.

Hyett, F.A. and Bazeley, W. (1895-97) *The bibliographer's manual of Gloucestershire literature*. Gloucester: John Bellows See especially 'Newspapers', Vol.1 322-25; Bristol newspapers, Vol. 3, 279-88. Supplement (1915).

Green, E. (1902) *Biblioteca Somersetsensis*. 3 vols. Taunton:. See especially 'Bath newspapers' Vol 1, 374-7 on; Vol 3, 109-4, on newspapers in the rest of the county.

(1905) Dorset and Somerset newspapers. *Dorset and Somerset Notes and Queries* 9, 143.

(1907) Local papers in 1827. *Bygones* 10, 300. (on Shropshire).

Sparke, A (1913) *Bibliographia Boltoniensis*. Manchester: Manchester University Press. See especially 'Newspapers and periodicals', 179-83.

Porter, W S (1914) Old Sheffield newspapers. *Transactions of the Hunter Archaeological Society* 1, 110-11.

Mathews, E R N (1916) *Bristol bibliography: a catalogue of books, pamphlets, collectanea, etc. relating to Bristol contained in the Central Reference Library*. Bristol: The Library. See especially, pp.v264-71.

Austin, R (1928) *Catalogue of the Gloucestershire collection*. Gloucester: Gloucester City Library.

Fenton, W A (1930-33) Cambridge periodicals 1750-1931. *Cambridge Public Library Record and Book List* 3-4, 50-60, 85-89, 115-27.

(1932) *Local catalogue of material concerning Newcastle and Northumberland, as represented in the Central Library, Newcastle upon Tyne*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Reid.

Barnes, F and Hobbes, J L (1951) *Handlist of newspapers published in Cumberland, Westmorland and North Lancashire*. Kendal: Cumberland and Westmorland Antiquarian and Archaeological Society.

Cordeaux, E H and Merry, D H (1955) *A bibliography of printed works relating to Oxfordshire*. Oxford: Oxford UP. See especially, pp. 141-5 which lists newspapers found in the Bodleian and the BM. This was completely revised and updated in 1981.

Thatcher, B F (1956) *Early Bristol newspapers: a detailed catalogue of Bristol newspapers published up to and including the year 1800 in the Bristol Reference Library*. Bristol:

Thwaite, M F (1956) *Hertfordshire newspapers 1772-1955: a list compiled for the county bibliography*. Welwyn: Hertfordshire Local History Council.

(1958) *Catalogue of the local history collection*. Huntingdon: County Library.

Brooke, L E J (1960) *Somerset newspapers 1725-1960*. Yeovil: the author.

Laughton, G E and Stephen, L R (1960) *Yorkshire newspapers: a bibliography with locations*. Harrogate: Library Association, Yorkshire branch.

Myson, W (1961) *Surrey newspapers: a handlist and tentative bibliography*. Wimbledon: Surrey Librarians Group.

Connisbee, R A (1962) *Bedfordshire bibliography: with some comments and bibliographical notes*. Luton: Bedfordshire Historical Records Society.

Smith, R E G (1964) *Newspapers first published before 1900 in Lancashire, Cheshire and the Isle of Man: a union list of holdings in libraries and record offices within that area*. London: Reference Special and Information Section of the Library Association.

(1966) *Nottinghamshire: a catalogue of the county local history collection*. 3rd edn. Nottingham: Nottinghamshire County Library. (first published 1953).

Hodgson, H W (1968) *A bibliography of the history and topography of Cumberland and Westmorland*. Carlisle: n.p.

Madden, L (1969) *Victorian periodicals in Leicester*. 2 vols. Leicester: Victorian Studies Centre.

(1970) *Suffolk local history: a short bibliography*. Ipswich: Suffolk Local History Council.

Humphrey, E (1971) *Periodicals and sets relating to British history in Norfolk and Suffolk libraries: a finding list*. Norwich: Centre for East Anglian Studies.

Leslie, K C and McCann, T J (1971) *Local history in West Sussex: a guide to sources*. Chichester: West Sussex Libraries.

(1971) *Local history guides*. Vol.4. *Newspapers*. Darlington: Darlington Public Library Local History Dept.

Hart, A (1972) *A catalogue of periodicals printed in Bristol 1820-1840*. Leicester: Victorian Studies Centre.

Dixon, D (1976) *Local newspapers and periodicals of the nineteenth century: a checklist of holdings in provincial libraries*. Leicester: Victorian Studies Centre.

Smith, L (1975) *Devon newspapers: a finding list*. Exeter: Standing Conference on Devon History.

Hopkin, D (1974) Local newspapers of the ILP, 1893-1906. *Society for the Study of Labour History Bulletin* 28, 28-37.

Hopkin, D (1974)' Local newspapers of the ILP, 1893-1906: a supplementary checklist', *Society for the Study of Labour History Bulletin* 29, 13.

Munford A P (1976) *South Yorkshire newspapers, 1754-1974. Archive handlists 1*. Wakefield: South Yorkshire County Council, Recreation Culture and Health Department.

(1977) Devon newspapers: a finding list. Amendments. *Devon History* 14, 36-7.

Hillier, R W E (1979) *Union catalogue of the newspapers for Peterborough, Stamford and Huntingdonshire*. Peterborough: Peterborough Local History Information Group.

Tangye, N (1980) *Cornwall newspapers 18th and 19th century: gazetteer and finding list*. Redruth: Trevithick Society.

Bennett, G; Bergess, W and Earl, C (1981) *The Kent bibliography: a finding list of Kent materials in the public libraries of the county and adjoining counties*. Library Association, London and Home Counties Branch.

(19832000) *Local newspapers in Derbyshire*. Matlock: Derbyshire Libraries.(4th edn.)

West, J (1983) 'Provincial newspapers from 1690' *in Town Records*, Chichester: Phillimore, 224-71.

(1986) *Handlist of local newspapers in Buckinghamshire libraries*. Aylesbury: Buckinghamshire Libraries.

Gibson, J S W (2001) *Local newspapers 1750-1920: England and Wales, Channel Island, Isle of Man: a select location list*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edn Birmingham: Federation of Family History Societies.

(1991) Newspapers in Cleveland. *Journal of Cleveland Family History Society* 4 (121) 8-11. Lists newspapers held in Middlesbrough, Hartlepool, Redcar and Stockton.

(1998) 'Newspapers held at Skipton Reference Library'. *Keighley and District Family History Society Journal* (Winter) 28.



## APPENDIX THREE

### Newspapers listed as Primarily Advertising *BRAD\**

BLNL holdings of series in bold type

Admail Birmingham

Tunbridge, Ashford, Teneterden, New Romney)

**Auto Exchange**

**Auto trader series** (14 regional edns covering the UK and Eire)

Aylesbury Local TV Guide

**Bargain Pages** - Birmingham, Shropshire, Wolverhampton

Birmingham SW Why

Bridgwater Scan

Burnham and Highbridge Scan

Champion Shopper Harrogate

Cheltenham Why

Coventry NW Why

Coventry SW Why

**Diamond Free Ads** -Dorset and New Forest, Herts, Beds and Bucks, Kent County, Anglia, etc.

Eastwood etc Shopper

Evesham and Cotswold Why

The Flyer

Friday Ad - (Brighton, Hove, Shoreham and the Downs, Uckfield, Lewes, Heathfield, Eastbourne, Hailsham, Pevensey, Hastings, Bexhill & Battle, Seaford, Newhaven and Peacehaven, Haywards Heath, Horsham)

Green 'Un (Ipswich)

Grinstad - East Grinstead

Halesowen Why

Hereford Admag

Ilkeston Shopper

Jobs South East

Kidderminster Why

Leamington Spa Review

Local events and what's on - (eg. Barbican Monthly Diary, Encore - Norfolk and Suffolk, What's on in Woking, Waveney Profile)

**Loot series (Beds Bucks and Herts, Croydon and Surrey, East Midlands, Essex, Kent, Leicester and Northants, Liverpool etc, London, Manchester, etc, Stoke and Staffordshire)**

**Malvern, Ledbury and Tewkesbury Why**

**Mid Somerset Scan**

**Peak Advertiser**

**Post Advertiser (Dorchester)**

**Redditch and Bromsgrove Why**

**Rugby Review**

**Shrewsbury Admag**

**Shropshire Bargain Pages**

**Skipton Advertiser & Craven Courier**

**Solihull North Why**

**Solihull Why**

**South Scan**

**Stamford Citizen**

**Stratford upon Avon Why**

**Sussex Adnews series**

**Tamworth Post**

**Thames Valley Weekly**

**Trading Post**

**Warwick and Leamington Why**

**Wealden Advertiser**

**Weekend Herald Crawley**

**Weekly Ad - Sandown**

**Wolverhampton Bargain Pages**

**Wolverhampton Bargain Pages**

**The Yeller (incorp Motor and Bike Trader)**

*\*This list is derived from the April 1998 BRAD and is not exhaustive. It covers a representative number of titles, and other local variants may exist.*

## **APPENDIX FOUR**

### **Lists of Free Newspapers based on returns from regional NEWSPLAN Implementation Committees**

These returns are unpublished and formed the basis from which DD was able to compile this list. Titles in bold are held by the British Library Newspaper Library

#### **EAST MIDLANDS**

**Alford Standard**  
**Alfreton and Ripley Echo**  
**Alfreton Chad**  
Alfreton Trader  
**Ashbourne News Telegraph**  
**Ashby Mail**  
**Ashby Times**  
**Beccles and Bungay Journal**  
**Belper Express**  
**Belper News**  
**Bolsover Advertiser**  
**Boston Standard**  
**Bradgate Mail**  
**Bury St Edmunds Citizen**  
**Bury St Edmunds Mercury**  
**Buxton Advertiser**  
**Buxton Times**  
**Cambridge Town Crier**  
**Chatteris Advertiser**  
**Chesterfield Gazette**  
**Coalville Mail**  
**Coalville Times**  
**Corby Herald and Post**  
**Daventry Express**  
**Derby Trader**  
Derbyshire Times  
**Dereham and Fakenham Times**  
**Diss Express**  
**Diss Mercury**  
Ely Standard  
**Ely Weekly News and Town Crier**  
**Fenland Citizen**  
**Gainsborough Standard**  
**Gainsborough Target**  
**Gainsborough Trader**  
**Grantham and Melton Trader**  
**Grantham Citizen**  
**Grantham Journal**

Great Yarmouth Mercury  
Harborough Mail  
Harborough Herald and Post  
Harleston Express  
Harwich and Manningtree Standard  
Haverhill Echo  
High Peak Courier  
High Peak Recorder  
Hinckley Herald and Journal  
Hinckley Times  
Horncastle News  
Horncastle Target  
Hucknall and Bulwell Dispatch  
Huntingdon Town Crier  
Hunts Post  
Ilkeston Advertiser  
Ilkeston Express  
Kettering Herald and Post  
Knighton and Humberstone Mail  
Leicester Mail  
Lincoln Chronicle  
Lincoln Target  
Lincs Free Press  
Long Eaton Advertiser  
Loughborough Echo  
Loughborough Echo Trader  
Loughborough Mail  
Louth Standard  
Lynn News  
Lowestoft Journal  
Mablethorpe and Sutton Standard  
Mansfield and Ashfield Observer  
Mansfield and Ashfield Recorder  
Mansfield Chad  
Market Rasen Mail  
Matlock Mercury and West Derbyshire News  
Melton Citizen  
Mildenhall Journal  
Newmarket Advertiser  
Newmarket Journal  
Norwich Mercy  
Nottingham Recorder  
Nottingham Topper  
Oadby and Wigston Mail  
Oundle Herald and Post  
Peterborough Citizen  
Peterborough Herald and Post  
Peterborough Herald  
Rainworth Chad  
Ramsey Post

**Retford and District Guardian**  
**Rutland and Stamford Mercury**  
**Saffron Walden Reporter**  
**Saffron Walden Weekly News**  
**Sherwood Chad**  
**Shirebrook Chad**  
**Skegness Standard**  
**Sleaford Standard**  
**South Notts Advertiser**  
**Spalding Guardian**  
**Spalding Post**  
**Spilsby Standard**  
**St Ives Town Crier**  
**Stamford Herald and Post**  
**Stamford Mercury**  
**Sudbury Mercury**  
**Suffolk Free Press**  
**Suffolk Mercury East**  
**Suffolk Mercury North**  
**Suffolk Mercury West**  
**Syston and Birstall Mail**  
**Warsop Chad**  
**West Norfolk Mercury**  
**Woodhouse Chad**  
**Worksop Guardian**

## **North West**

**About Prescott and Rainhill**

**Ad News**

**Advertiser: Prestwich, Whitefield and Ratcliffe**

**Alderly and District Courier**

**Beacon**

**Biddulph Guardian**

**Blackburn and Darwen Mail**

**Blackburn Herald and Post**

**Bolton Journal**

**Bolton Metro News**

**Bootle Times**

**Borough News**

**Bury Journal**

**Chester District Standard**

**Chester Herald**

**Chester Herald and Post**

**Chorley Leader**

**Chorley Town Crier**

**Chorley Leyland Trader**

**Chronicle Weekend**

**Congleton Guardian**

**Crewe and Nantwich Guardian.**

**Crosby Journal**

**Crosby Traders Journal**

**Denton Post**

**Ellesmere Port Standard**

**Evening Standard**

**Globe**

**Hale and Hale Barns Independent**

**Horwich Advertiser**

**Huyton with Roby Star**

**Hyndburn Citizen**

**Hyndbury Express**

**Knowsley Challenge**

**Knutsford Express/Advertiser**

**Lancashire County Clarion**

**Lancaster and Morecambe City Reporter**

**Lancaster and Morecambe Guardian**

**Leigh Reporter**

**Leigh, Tyldesley and Atherton Journal**

**Leyland Citizen**

**Lancaster Journal**

**Macclesfield Community News**

**Macclesfield Messenger**

**Macclesfield Times**

**Manchester Metro News**

**Mercury**

**Messenger**

**Messenger in Warrington**

**Midweek Guardian**

**Midweek Visitor**

**Mostan, Middleton and Crumpsall Express**

**Neston News**  
**Northenden News**  
**Pendle Citizen**  
**Pendle Herald and Post**  
**Peynton Post**  
**Preston and Blackpool Star**  
**Preston and District Advertiser**  
**Preston and South Ribble Weekly Mail**  
**Preston Red Rose Advertiser**  
**Recorder**  
**Rochdale and Heywood Express**  
**Rossendale Citizen**  
**Rossendale Express**  
**Runcorn and Widnes Herald and Post**  
**Runcorn World**  
**Salford City Reporter**  
**St Helens Leader**  
**St Helens Reporter**  
**St Helens Star**  
**Sale and Altrincham Express/ Advertiser**  
**Sale and Urmston Messenger**  
**South Manchester Express/Advertiser**  
**South Manchester Reporter**  
**South Cheshire Herald and Post**  
**South Wirral Herald and Post**  
**Southport Post**  
**Southport Trader**  
**Southport Visitor**  
**Tameside Echo**  
**Tameside Leader**  
**Town and Country Post**  
**Wigan Journal**  
**Wigan Leader**  
**Wigan Reporter**  
**Wilmslow Express/Advertiser**  
**Warrington Mercury**  
**Warrington Midweek Guardian**  
**Warrington World**  
**Wilmslow Express Advertiser**  
**Wilmslow Messenger**  
**Wirral Globe**  
**Wythenshawe World**

## **SOUTH WEST**

**Admag (Portishead, Clevedon)**

**Aldershot Courier**

**Alton Times and Mail**

**Andover Advertiser**

**Avon Advertiser**

**Axminster (and Seaton) News**

**Banbury Cake**

**Basingstoke Gazette Extra**

**Bath Advertiser**

**Bath and District Star**

**Bath and Keynsham Advertiser**

**Bath and District Star**

**Bicester Review**

**Bordon Times and Mail**

**Bournemouth Advertiser**

**Bridgwater Scan**

**Bristol Journal -**

**Bristol Observer - East North, South, City, East & Keynsham, Kingswood, North West**

### **South Gloucs edns**

**Burnham and Highbridge Scan**

**Camelford and Delabole Boscastle and Tintagel Gazette**

**Cheltenham and Gloucester Independent**

**Cheltenham News**

**Chew Valley Gazette**

**Chippenham and Corsham Advertiser**

**Christchurch Advertiser**

**Clevedon, Nailsea, Yatton and Portishead Mercury**

**County Independent**

**Dawlish Post**

**Devizes, Melksham and Vale of Pewsey News**

**Devizes, Pewsey and Marlborough Star**

**Dorchester Advertiser**

**East Bristol Observer**

**East Devon News**

**Eastleigh Gazette Extra**

**Eastleigh and S Hants Weekly News**

**Exeter Leader**

**Exmouth Herald**

**Exmouth Journal**

**Express and Star Yeovil and S Somerset**

**Fareham and Gosport Journal**

**Farnborough News**

**Fleet Courier**

**Fleet Mail**

**The Forester**

**Forest Journal**

**Forest of Dean and Wye Valley Review**

**Frome Star**

**Gloucester Independent**

**Hants Gazetter**

**Hants Courier**

**Havant and Waterlooville Journal**



**Hayling Islander**  
Helston and District Free Gazette  
Honiton (and Cullompton) News  
**Keynsham and District Advertiser**  
Kingswood Observer  
**Launceston, Holsworthy, Bude and Stratton Gazette**  
**Liphook Times and Mail**  
**Liskeard and Looe, Saltash, Callington Gazette**  
Melksham Independent News  
Mendip Life  
Mid Devon Express and Star  
Mid Somerset Scan  
**Midweek Herald**  
**New Forest Post**  
**New Milton Advertiser**  
Newton Abbot and District Weekender  
North Avon Observer  
**North Devon Gazette & Advertiser -Bideford and Barnstaple**  
**- Ilfracombe**  
**Norton Radstock Advertiser**  
Oxford Courier  
**Oxford Journal**  
**Oxford Star**  
Penwith Pirate  
**Petersfield Mail**  
**Plymouth Extra**  
Plympton, Plymostock & Ivybridge News  
**Poole Advertiser**  
Portsmouth Journal  
**Salisbury Times**  
Sedgmoor Express and Star  
South Devon and Plymouth Times  
**South Hants Weekly News**  
South Oxfordshire Courier  
**Southampton Advertiser**  
**St Austell, Bodmin and Newquay Packet**  
**St Ives Times and Echo**  
**Stour Valley Advertiser**  
Stroud News and Journal  
Swanage and Wareham Advertiser  
**Swindon and District Messenger**  
**Swindon Guardian**  
**Swindon Star**  
Taunton Express and Star  
**Teignmouth News**  
**Tewkesbury Admag**  
**Thame Gazette**  
Torbay Weekender  
Totnes News  
Totnes Times  
**Trowbridge Star**  
Truro Packet  
Waterside Observer  
Weekly News (Yeovil, Somerset and Sherborne)  
Wells Journal

West and North Wilts Star  
West Somerset Trader  
West Wiltshire Advertiser  
Westbury Warminster and Frome Advertiser  
Weston and Somerset Mercury  
**Weston and Worle News**  
Weston super Mare Admag  
Weymouth, Portland and Dorchester Advertiser  
White Horse News(Westbury)  
**Winchester Extra**  
**Yateley District Courier**  
Yeovil Express and Star

## **WEST MIDLANDS**

The Advertiser (N. Staffs)  
**Berrows Worcester Journal**  
Biddulph Guardian  
**Birmingham Metro News**  
**Bloxwich Advertiser**  
Bromsgrove Messenger  
**Brownhills Advertiser**  
**Burntwood Mercury**  
**Burntwood Post**  
Burton and South Derbyshire Advertiser  
**Burton Trader**  
**Cannock Chase Chronicle**  
**Cannock Chase and Burntwood Post**  
**Congleton Guardian**  
Coventry Citizen  
**Dudley Chronicle**  
**Dudley News**  
Edbaston and Harborne Observer  
**Evesham Admag**  
**Evesham Journal**  
**Great Barr and Erdington Chronicle**  
**Great Barr Observer**  
**Halesowen Chronicle**  
**Halesowen News and County Express**  
**Hereford and Leominster Journal**  
**Hereford Times - City and South**  
**Hereford Times - Leominster and North**  
**Kidderminster Chronicle**  
**Kidderminster Shuttle**  
Leamington Spa Review  
Ledbury Reporter  
**Leek Post and Times**  
**Lichfield and Rugeley Chronicle**  
**Lichfield Mercury**  
**Lichfield Post**  
**Ludlow Advertiser**  
**Ludlow Journal**  
**News of Willenhall, Wednesbury and Darlestone**  
**News of Wolverhampton**  
**North Shropshire Chronicle**  
North Shropshire Chronicle  
**Norton Radstock Advertiser**  
**Redditch Advertiser**  
Redditch and Alcester Standard  
**Royal Leamington Spa Observer**  
**Rugby Advertiser**  
Rugby Gazette

**Rugby Observer**  
**Rugeley Mercury**  
**Rugeley Post**  
**Sandwell Chronicle**  
Sandwell Observer  
**Shelfield Advertiser**  
**Solihull News**  
Solihull Times  
Solihull Times -North  
**Stafford Chronicle**  
**Stafford Post**  
**Stourbridge News**  
**Stourbridge Chronicle**  
Stourport News  
**Stratford upon Avon Journal**  
**Sutton Coldfield News**  
**Sutton Coldfield Observer**  
**Sutton Coldfield Observer Midweek**  
**Sutton Coldfield Times**  
Tamworth and North Warwickshire Times  
Tamworth Herald Extra  
**Telford Journal**  
**Tenby Wells Advertier**  
**Walsall Advertiser**  
**Walsall Chronicle**  
**Walsall Observer**  
West Midlands Herald (est 1997)  
Whitchurch Herald  
**Wolverhampton Chronicle**

## **YORKSHIRE AND HUMBERSIDE**

### **Barnsley Independent**

Barnsley Independent Darton

Barnsley Independent Dearne

Barnsley Independent Hoyland

Barnsley Independent Penistone

Barnsley Independent Royston

Barnsley Independent Wombwell

Barnsley Independent Town

### **Batley News**

Beverley Advertiser

Beverley Guardian

Bradford Star

Bridlington Free Press

Bridlington Gazette and Herald

Calderdale News

Craven Herald and Pioneer

Chronicle Selby

Dearne Valley Weekender

Dewsbury Reporter

Dinnington and Maltby Guardian

Driffield Times

Doncaster Free Press

Filey and Hunmanby Mercury

Grimsby Target

Haltemprice and East Yorkshire Advertiser

Harrogate Advertiser

Hebden Bridge Times

Hemsworth and South Elmshall Express

Herald Harrogate Ripon Knaresborough, etc

Holderness and East Yorkshire Advertiser

Holderness Gazette

Hull Advertiser East

Hull Advertiser West

Hull Advertiser South

Ilkley Gazette

Keighley News

Keighley News Mid Week

Knaresboro Post

Leeds Weekly News

Mercury Sheffield

Mirfield Reporter

Morley Advertiser

Morley Observer

North Yorkshire News Thirsk, Bedale, Ripon

North Yorkshire News Northallerton

North Yorkshire News Richmond

Pontefract and Castelford Extra formerly Pontefract and Castelford

Weekly Express

**Pudsey Times**  
**Rotherham Record**  
**Ripon Gazette**  
**Rotherham Advertiser**  
**Sheffield Advertiser**  
**Scunthorpe Target**  
**Scunthorpe Trader News**  
**Wakefield Express**  
**Wakefield Mid Week Extra**  
**Wetherby News**  
**Wharfe Valley Times**  
**Wharfe Valley Times Otley**  
**Whitby Gazette**  
**York and District Advertiser**  
**York Star series**

## APPENDIX FIVE

### Free newspapers not included in returns from NEWSPLAN committees

This list was compiled by DD using *BRAD* (April 1998) and the British Library holdings

#### NORTH

**Chester-le-Street Advertiser**  
**Consett and Stanley Advertiser**  
**East Cleveland Herald and Post**  
**East Cumbrian Gazette**  
**Darlington, Aycliffe and Sedgefield Advertiser**  
**Durham Advertiser**  
**Gateshead Herald**  
**Hexham Courant**  
**Lake District Herald**  
**Lakeland Echo**  
**Lakes Leader**  
**Middlesbrough Herald and Post**  
**Morpeth Herald**  
**North Shields News Guardian**  
**Northumberland Herald and Post**  
**North Tyneside Herald and Post**  
**Stockton and Billingham Herald and Post**  
**Wallsend News**  
**Wear Valley Advertiser**  
**West Cumbrian Gazette**  
**Westmorland Gazette**  
**Whitehaven News**

## **SOUTH EAST**

This list was compiled by DD using *BRAD* (April 1998) and the British Library holdings

**Addlestone and Byfleet Review**

**Adscene - Ashford, Canterbury, Dover, Folkestone, Gillingham, Maidstone, Margate**

**RoyalTunbridge Wells**

**Advertiser Newbury**

**Ash Mail**

**Banstead Herald**

**Bargain weekly**

**Barking and Dagenham Citizen**

**Barking and Dagenham Express**

**Barking and East Ham Yellow Advertiser**

**Barnet Advertiser**

**Barnet and Potters Bar Times**

**Barnet and Whetstone Press**

**Basildon Recorder**

**Bedfordshire on Sunday - Borough, Mid Beds**

**Bedfordshire Times and Citizen - Bedford, Mid Beds**

**Bexhill News**

**Bexley Borough Mercury**

**Bexley Heath and Welling News Shopper**

**Bexleyheath and Welling Times**

**Bexleyheath Leader**

**Biggin Hill News**

**Bognor Regis Journal and Guardian**

**Bognor Regis Observer**

**Borehamwood Times**

**Bracknell and Ascot Times**

**Bracknell and Wokingham News Extra**

**Bracknell and Wokingham Standard**

**Braintree, Witham Chronicle**

**Braintree, Witham Yellow Advertiser**

**Brent and London Recorder**

**Brent Leader**

**Brentford and Chiswick Leader**

**Brentwood Weekly News**

**Brentwood Yellow Advertiser**

**Brighton and Hove Leader**

**Bromley and Beckenham Leader**

**Bromley News**

**Bromley and Hayes News Shopper**

**Bucks Advertiser**

**Burgess Hill Leader**

**Burnham and Maldon Standard**

**Byfleet Shopper**

**Camberley and District Courier**

**Camden New Journal**

**Castle Point and Rochford Yellow Advertiser**



**Chelmsford Weekly News**  
**Chelmsford and South Woodham Weekly News**  
**Chelmsford Yellow Advertiser**  
**Chertsey and Addlestone Leader**  
**Chichester Journal and Guardian**  
**Chingford Yellow Advertiser**  
**Citizen Bishops Stortford, Leighton Buzzard etc. Milton Keynes St Neots**  
**City of Westminster Post**  
**Coastal Express**  
**Colchester Express**  
**County Border Times and Mail**  
**Cranleigh Shopper**  
**Crawley News**  
**Crawley Observer**  
**Crouch End Independent**  
**Crowthorne, Sandhurst and Owlsmoor Newsweek**  
**Croydon Guardian**  
**Croydon Post**  
**Dagenham Yellow Advertiser**  
**Dartford and Swanley News**  
**Dartford Times**  
**Docklands Express**  
**Dunmow Broadcast and Recorder**  
**Ealing and Southall Informer**  
**Ealing Leader**  
**East End Life**  
**East Grinstead Courier**  
**East Grinstead Observer**  
**East London Advertiser**  
**Eastbourne and District Advertiser**  
**Edgware and Mill Hill Press**  
**Edgware and Mill Hill Times**  
**Eltham and Greenwich Times**  
**Eltham News Shopper**  
**Enfield Advertiser**  
**Enfield Town Express**  
**Enfield Independent**  
**Epping Forest and Redbridge Independent**  
**Epping Forest Herald**  
**Epping Star**  
**Epsom, Banstead and Leatherhead Informer**  
**Epsom and Ewell Herald**  
**Esher and Elmbridge Guardian**  
**Essex Weekly News**  
**Farnborough Courier**  
**Feltham Advertiser**  
**Finchley Advertiser**  
**Fleet Courier**  
**Friday Ad (various edns) Sussex Crawley Brighton Eastbourne Hastings**  
**Seaford Uckfield Worthing Kent Ashford Tenterden Dover**  
**Folkestone**  
**Gatwick News**  
**Godalming Shopper**  
**Godalming Times**  
**Gravesend Leader**

**Grays Herald**  
**Greenwich and Charlton News Shopper**  
**Guildford Shopper**  
**Guildford Times**  
**Hackney Echo**  
**Hammersmith, Fulham and Chiswick Times**  
**Hammersmith, Fulham and Chiswick Post**  
**Hammersmith, Fulham Guardian**  
**Haringey Advertiser**  
**Haringey Independent**  
**Harlow Citizen**  
**Harlow and Epping Herald**  
**Harlow and Epping Star**  
**Harold Recorder**  
**Harrow and London Recorder**  
**Harrow Informer**  
**Harrow Kenton and Kingsbury Independent**  
**Harrow Leader**  
**Hart Courier**  
**Hastings News**  
**Hastings and St Leonard's Observer**  
**Havering Herald**  
**Heathrow Villager**  
**Hemel Hempstead Express**  
**Hemel Hempstead Gazette**  
**Hendon and Finchley Press**  
**Hendon and Finchley Times**  
**Herald Bishops Stortford and Saffron Walden**  
**Herald Extra**  
**Herald and Post Luton and Dunstable**  
**Herts Advertiser**  
**Herts and Essex Observer**  
**Herts and Lea Valley Star series**  
**Herts Mercury**  
**Herts Mercury**  
**Hitchin Comet**  
**Hoddesdon, Hertford and Ware Herald**  
**Horley Life**  
**Horsham and District Advertiser**  
**Hounslow and Chiswick Informer**  
**Hounslow and London Recorder**  
**Hounslow and Isleworth Leader**  
**Ilford and Redbridge Post**  
**Ilford Leader**  
**Ilford Yellow Advertiser**  
**Island Times Newspaper**  
**Islington Chronicle**  
**Jobs! Jobs! Jobs!**  
**Kensington News**  
**Kensington and Chelsea Post**  
**Kensington and Chelsea Times**  
**Kingston Borough Guardian**  
**Kingston Informer**  
**KM Extra - Ashford Canterbury Dover & Deal Faversham Folkestone Gravesend**  
**Herne Bay Maidstone Medway Sittingborne Tenterden Sevenoaks**

**Thanet Tonbridge Tunbridge Wells Chatham Folkestone Gillingham Margate**

**Rainham editions**

**Lancing Herald**

**Lea Valley Star**

**Leatherhead Advertiser**

**Leatherhead and Ashstead Guardian**

**Leigh and Westcliff Times**

**Letchworth and Baldock Comet**

**Lewisham and Catford News Shopper**

**Liphook Times and Mail**

**Littlehampton and Rustington Guardian**

**Loughton, Chigwell and Buckhurst Hill Gazette**

**Loughton Review**

**Luton Leader**

**Maldon and Burnham Special**

**Marylebone Mercury**

**Messenger Haslemere**

**Mid Sussex Leader**

**Mid Sussex Citizen**

**Milton Keynes and District Herald**

**Milton Keynes Citizen**

**Milton Keynes Herald**

**Mirror Extra -Redhill Reigate Horley; Oxted Caterham**

**Mitcham and Morden Guardian**

**Molesey News and Mail**

**Newbury and Thatcham Chronicle**

**Newham News**

**News in Focus Kent Tunbridge Wells**

**News Shopper series**

**Newport Pagnell, Olney and District Citizen**

**Notting Hill and Bayswater Times**

**Observer Midweek**

**Orpington and Chislehurst and Beckenham News Shopper**

**Orpington and Chislehurst Leader**

**Petersfield Mail**

**Post Dispatch ser**

**Potters Bar & Cuffley Express**

**Potters Bar Times**

**Rayleigh Times**

**Reading Chronicle Midweek**

**Reading Standard**

**Redbridge Yellow Advertiser**

**Review - St Albans Watford**

**Richmond and Twickenham Guardian**

**Richmond and Twickenham Informer**

**Romford and Havering Post**

**Royston Weekly News**

**Rye to Battle Observer**

**Saffron Waldon, Stansted, Sawston Reporter**

**Saffron Waldon Weekly Post**

**Sawbridgeworth Star**

**St Albans and Harpenden Observer**

**Sevenoaks Focus**

**Shoreham Lancing and Steyning Standard**

**Slough and Langley Express**

**Slough and Windsor Herald and Post**  
**Slough and Windsor Informer**  
 Slough Messenger  
**Slough Windsor and Maidenhead Leader**  
**Solent Advertiser**  
 South Bucks Star  
 South Coast Leader  
 Southall Guardian  
**Southend and Westcliff Times**  
**Southend Standard Recorder**  
**Southend Yellow Advertiser**  
 Southern News  
**Southgate, Palmers Green, Winchmore Hill Express**  
 Southward News  
 Staines and Egham News  
 Staines Informer  
**Stanmore Edward Burnt Oak Independent**  
**Stanmore Observer**  
 Stanstead Observer  
**Star - Harlow Star Herts Star Classified**  
**Stevenage Comet**  
 Stevenage Gazette  
 Stevenage Herald  
 Stoney Stratford and District Citizen  
**Stour Valley Advertiser**  
**Stratford and Newham Express**  
**Stratford Standard**  
**Streatham and Clapham and Dulwich Guardian**  
**Streatham Tooting, Brixton and Clapham Mercury**  
**Surrey and Hants News**  
**Surrey and Hants Star**  
**Sutton Borough Independent**  
**Sutton Herald**  
**Swanley Leader**  
**Swanley Times**  
**Tandridge County Border News**  
 Thame Gazette  
**Thatcham News**  
 The Mercury (Bexley, Greenwich and Lewisham edns)  
 The Messenger  
**Thurrock Gazette**  
**Times and Citizen Bedford, Mid Beds**  
**Tottenham and Wood Green Independent**  
**Uxbridge and Hillingdon Leader**  
**Uxbridge and West Drayton Informer**  
**Uxbridge Informer**  
**Victoria and Pimlico Times**  
 Walford Free Observer  
 Waltham Abbey Gazette  
**Waltham Forest Yellow Advertiser**  
**Waltham Forest Independent**  
**Walton and Weybridge Informer**  
**Walton and Weybridge Leader**  
**Wandsworth and Putney Guardian**  
**Watford Free Observer**

Weekend Herald  
Welwyn and Hatfield Times  
**Wembley, Kenton and London Recorder**  
West Sussex County Times  
West Sussex Gazette and South of England Advertiser  
**Westerham County Border News**  
**Westminster Times**  
**Willesden and Brent Weekly Advertiser**  
**Wimbledon and Morden Guardian**  
Windsor and Maidenhead Observer  
**Woking Informer**  
**Woking Review**  
Wokingham Times  
**Wood Green and Tottenham Weekly Herald**  
**Wood Green and Tottenham Weekly News**  
Woodley Chronicle  
**Woolwich and Plumstead News Shopper**  
**Worthing and District Advertiser**  
**Worthing Guardian**  
**Yateley Courier**  
**Yellow Advertiser (Barking, Redbridge, Romford & Havering, Stratford & Newham, Waltham Forest edns)**

## APPENDIX SIX

### Samples of newspapers to determine percentages of news content

% of pages containing some news content

Por F	Title	%
P	Ashbourne News Telegraph	66
P	Atherstone Herald	29
F	Banbury Cake	25
P	Banbury Guardian	50
P	Barking and Dagenham Post	29
P	Barking and Dagenham Recorder	25
P	Barnet & Potters Bar Times	25
F	Basingstoke Gazette Extra	20
P	Beccles and Bungay Journal	52
F	Beverley Guardian	20
F	Borehamwood Times	20
P	Braintree and Witham Times	48
F	Boston Standard	31
P	Bridlington Free Press	32
P	Brighouse Echo	45
P	Bromley and Beckenham Times	30
P	Buckingham and Winslow Advertiser	24
P	Buckinghamshire Advertiser	31
F	Bucks Advertiser	8
P	Bucks Examiner	24
P	Bucks Free Press	50
F	Bucks Free Press Midweek	48
F	Bucks Herald	21
P	Bury Free Press	26
P	Buxton Advertiser	47
P	Chard and Ilminster News	60
F	Chelmsford, etc Weekly News	27
P	Cheshunt and Waltham Mercury	22
P	Chingford Guardian	26
P	Chislehurst Times	29
F	Citizen Banbury	36
F	Citizen Milton Keynes	29
F	Citizen St Neots	33
P	Comet Hitchin	25
P	Comet Stevenage	27
P	Congleton Chronicle	63
F	Courier Abingdon	46
F	Courier Oxford	46
F	Crawley Observer	25
F	Cumberland & Westmorland Herald	10
P	Cumberland News	48
F	Derby News Express	22
P	Ealing and Acton Gazette	33
P	East Grinstead Courier	43
P	East Sussex Courier	23

P	Eastbourne Gazette	66
P	Eastbourne Herald	71
P	Eastwood and Kimberly Advertiser	50
P	Edgware and Mill Hill Times	12
P	Ellesmere Port Pioneer	
P	Eltham and Greenwich Times	35
P	Essex Chronicle	26
F	Extra Winchester	42
P	Falmouth Packet	57
P	Fleetwood Weekly News	36
P	Fulham Chronicle	48
P	Gainsborough Standard	44
P	Gateshead Post	63
P	Gazette Hemel Hempstead	64
P	Gazette Wootton Bassett	50
P	Gazette Hitchin	56
P	Gazette Letchworth	56
P	Gazette Stevenage	56
P	Glossop Chronicle	35
F	Grantham and Melton Trader	17
P	Grantham Journal	40
P	Greenford & Northolt Gazette	21
P	Hampstead and Highgate Express	43
F	Hammersmith, etc Times	32
P	Hammersmith, etc Gazette	26
P	Hampshire Chronicle	57
P	Harborough Mail	57
P	Harrow Observer	21
F	Haverhill Echo	50
F	Hebden Bridge Times	44
F	Hendon & Finchley Times	11
P	Hendon Standard	50
P	Henley Standard	50
F	Herald Ilford	20
F	Herald Welwyn Garden City & Hatfield	28
P	Herts Advertiser	35
P	Herts Advertiser St Albans	34
P	Herts Royston Crow	42
F	High Peak Reporter	44
P	Hinckley Times	29
P	Hoddesdon and Broxbourne Mercury	24
F	Horncastle and Mid Lincs Standard	47
P	Horncastle News	42
P	Hucknall and Bulwell Dispatch	35
P	Huntingdon Post	19
F	Huntingdon Town Crier	50
F	Ilford and Redbridge Post	13
P	Ilford Recorder	17
P	Ilkeston Advertiser	59
F	Journal Gazette	50
P	Islington Gazette	31
F	Kenilworth Observer	25
P	Kenilworth Weekly Times	25
F	Knutsford Guardian	31
P	Leamington Spa Courier	23

This was based on a shelf check of newspapers held by the Copyright Receipt Office at BLNL in March 1998

## APPENDIX SEVEN

### Proportion of News Content from a sample of 100 free and paid –for titles

P = Number of Paid-for titles

F = Number of Free titles

%	P	F
	1	1
10	4	3
15	3	1
20	15	7
25	18	6
30	11	5
35	7	1
40	9	
45	9	4
50	10	3
55	6	
60	4	
65	2	
70	1	



## APPENDIX EIGHT

### MERSEYSIDE NEWSPAPERS

#### PERCENTAGE OF ADVERTISING CONTENT

TITLE	%
BIRKENHEAD NEWS	91.5
BROMBROUGH NEWS	91.5
HESWALL NEWS	91.5
HOYLAKE & WEST KIRBY NEWS	91.5
NESTONNEWS	91.5
WALLASEYNEWS	91.5
FORMBY CHAMPION	85
MAGHULL CHAMPION	85
SOUTHPORT CHAMPION	87
SKELMERSDALE CHAMPION	73.5
MIDWEEK VISITER	82
MAGHULL ADVERTISER	77
WIRRAL GLOBE	82
WIRRAL CHRONICLE	65
FORMBY TIMES	63
SOUTHPORT VISITER	65
CROSBY HERALD	82
BOOTLE TIMES	86.5
ANFIELD AND WALTON STAR	83
MAGHULL AND AINTREE STAR	87
MERSEYMART & STAR WEST DERBY & TUEBROOK	83
MERSEYMART & STAR HUYTON AND ROBY STAR	85

## **APPENDIX NINE**

### **SUFFOLK NEWSPAPERS**

#### **PERCENTAGE OF ADVERTISING CONTENT**

BURY MERCURY	59
BURY ST EDMUNDS CITIZEN	86
EAST SUFFOLK MERCURY	73
HAVERHILL ECHO	70
IPSWICH ADVERTISER	87
LOWESTOFT JOURNAL	47
NEWMARKET JOURNAL	76
NORTH SUFFOLK MERCURY	73
STOWMARKET MERCURY	84
SUDBURY MERCURY	69
SUFFOLK ADVERTISER	80
WAVENEY ADVERTISER	90
WEST SUFFOLK MERCURY	62

## APPENDIX TEN

### NEWSPAPER DATA ELEMENTS - MANUAL RECORDS

Codes M =Mandatory, MA - Mandatory if applicable or available; O = Optional

#### Description

Area 1	Title proper	M
	Parallel title(s)	MA
	other title information (in specific cases)	O
Area 2	Edition statement	MA
Area 3	Numeric and chronological designations	MA
Area 4	Place of publication	M
	Publisher	MA
Area 5	Extent	O
	Dimensions	O
Area 7	Notes:	
	General note	O
	Frequency	O
	Variant title	O
	Language	MA
	Linking notes*	MA
	Reproduction note	O
	No more published note	MA
	Publication details (may include notes on proof numbers, placards, place of publication, publisher and printer)	O
	Geographic coverage	O
	Item described	MA
	Index availability	O
Area 8	ISSN	MA
	Key title	O

Area 9                      Location data                      MA

\* (Lining notes may include: continuations, absorptions, mergers, splits, other editions, translations and changes back to original title)

Reproduced from H. Komorous and Robert B. Harriman *International guidelines for the cataloguing of newspapers for the IFLA Section on Serial Publications, Working Group on Newspapers*. London: IFLA UBCIM Programme 1989.

## APPENDIX ELEVEN

### NEWSPAPER DATA SHEETS USED IN NEW YORK STATE

The final report of the task force on newspaper bibliography and preservation in New York State provided Newspaper data sheets which went further than most catalogues in the amount of information required

#### NEWSPAPER DATA SHEETS

NAME OF LIBRARY/INST/INDIV. HOLDING NEWSPAPER

-----

---

#### BIBLIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| A. Full title of newspaper | County<br>City or town   |
|                            | Date of publication (Information<br>to be taken from newspaper only)<br>Beginning date: v.1 no 1<br>Date<br>Last published v.--- no---<br>Date |
- b. Title change during a publication                      Specify volume no and date of change
- c. Issue period [daily (D), weekly (W), semi-weekly (S-W), monthly (M) or other
- d. Political affiliation of newspaper or change in political affiliation if obvious
- e. Business address for the newspaper. Indicate dates for a change in location
- f. Number and size of pages per issue

- g. Price and circulation where indicated.
- h. Names of publishers with dates of ownership
- i. Names of editors with dates of editorship
- j. Names of printers with dates

*[The second section is concerned with the physical condition (and is less relevant to this chapter. The third section is concerned with microfilm and is important to researchers]*

**Microfilm data**

- a. Has the newspaper been microfilmed?    Yes----    No---
- b. Issues filmed (Indicate dates, volumes, numbers, etc.
- c. Is a positive available?    Yes----    No ----
- d. Is a master negative available?    Yes----    No---
- e. Where is the negative located?
- f. Where was the microfilming done?

## APPENDIX TWELVE

### GUIDELINES FOR BIBLIOGRAPHIC DESCRIPTION OF NEWSPAPERS

These are intended to ensure that a full bibliographic history of each newspaper is recorded and should not be regarded as a substitute for following national and international cataloguing standards.

#### Title (Mandatory)

- This identifies the newspaper and is the element by which it will be arranged in a bibliography.
- The title of a newspaper is normally found on the masthead on the first page.
- Newspaper titles are frequently complicated: with sub-titles which may change frequently. The title proper is that part up to the first logical break.
- It should be transcribed exactly as it appears - with regard to wording, order and spelling eg. *Southport Visiter not Visitor*.
- It should not normally be abridged but in the case of an exceptionally long title omission marks should indicate that an omission has taken place.
- ISBD(S), MARC and AACR all specify that when a title proper changes, the serial must be regarded as having ended and a new one has begun with a separate entry for the new title. However, for bibliographies it may be more appropriate to follow the practice of the British Library Newspaper Library with a composite entry for all title changes.
- House style will determine whether or not capitalisation is adopted for all significant words in the title. If avoiding capitals note that all proper names including places must be capitalised.
- Many newspaper titles are derived from proper names such as Mercury, Iris and Argus and require capitalisation whereas star and sentinel do not. If in doubt consult the *Concise Oxford Dictionary*, e.g. *Evening Argus*, *Sheffield Iris*, *Leicester Mercury* but *Staffordshire sentinel*; *the star*
- Include *the* if it is the first word in a title

#### Subtitles

- These are separated by a colon; and should be recorded exactly as they appear
- Variants of the sub-title should also be recorded
- The first word is not normally capitalised

#### Dating (Mandatory)

##### *Identification and dating of issues*

- This lists the first and last issues of the newspaper, and if the sequence of numbering changes the new sequence should be separated by a colon.
- The first and last issue of each sequence are separated by a dash.
- The issue number is followed by the date.
- If there is no issue number just record the date.
- It will be impossible to ascertain the start date of many newspapers where no early copies survive.
- Do not count backwards to determine a starting date as there is a strong likelihood that this will be incorrect.
- Secondary sources may assist in determining dating, eg. Charles Mitchell's *Newspaper Press Directory* or *BRAD*

#### **Frequency (Mandatory)**

- This should use standard labels such as Daily, Weekly, Fortnightly or Monthly
- Avoid using terms such as semi-weekly prefer twice a week
- Where frequency changes indicate this and if necessary eg. Fortnightly (slightly irregular June 1863-65)

#### **Price (Optional)**

- The price of each issue should be given.
- This will involve searching retrospectively through files for changes although press directories will often assist. Changes in taxation rates caused newspaper prices to change in the eighteenth and nineteenth century. Dates to watch for are 1819 and 1855

#### **Physical format (Mandatory)**

- This is particularly important as a distinction needs to be made between hard copy and microfilm
- Where a title is partly in the original and partly in microfilm the details of each should be shown separately
- If a newspaper is available online, indication should be given of the dates covered and whether the newspaper has been archived and for how far back

### **Location (Optional)**

- Detailed holdings lists should be included for each repository

### **Indexes (Optional)**

- The existence of any indexes should be noted along with the dates covered and the type of index eg. obituaries, subjects, places etc. Indicate if the index is ongoing, its format and where it was compiled.

In some cases, historical records indicate a newspaper existed despite there being no known surviving copy. In such cases, indicate the evidence for its existence eg. no known copy; or eg. known from *Bolton Bibliography*(1913)





















